

Flower

~~M~~
~~St~~~~X~~ 5

QP
361
S 85
1917







Cornell University
Library

The original of this book is in
the Cornell University Library.

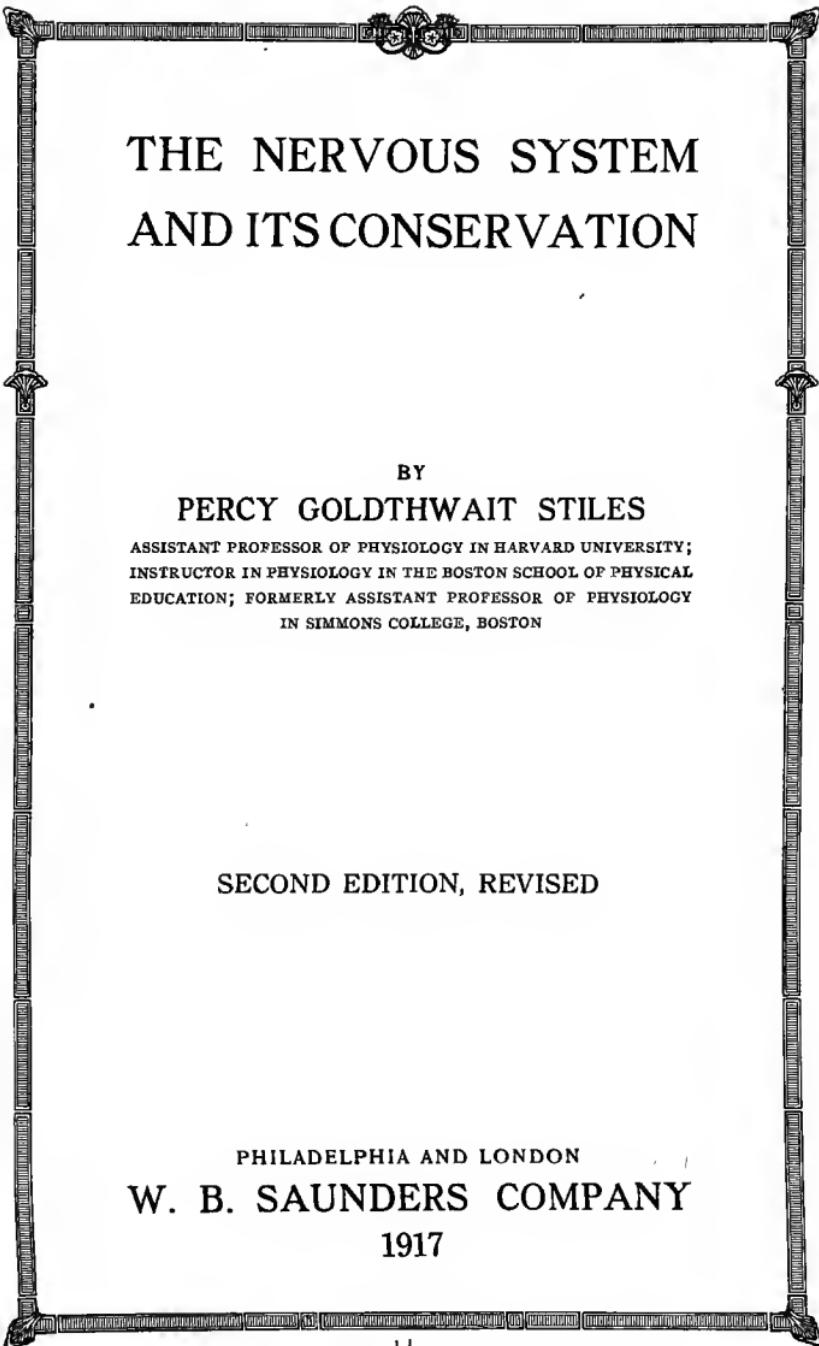
There are no known copyright restrictions in
the United States on the use of the text.

BOOKS
BY
PERCY G. STILES

Human Physiology
12mo of 405 pages, illustrated.
Cloth, \$1.50 net.

Nutritional Physiology
12mo of 287 pages, illustrated.
Cloth, \$1.25 net. *Second Edition.*

**The Nervous System and Its
Conservation**
12mo of 240 pages, illustrated.
Cloth, \$1.50 net. *Second Edition.*



THE NERVOUS SYSTEM AND ITS CONSERVATION

BY
PERCY GOLDTHWAIT STILES

ASSISTANT PROFESSOR OF PHYSIOLOGY IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY;
INSTRUCTOR IN PHYSIOLOGY IN THE BOSTON SCHOOL OF PHYSICAL
EDUCATION; FORMERLY ASSISTANT PROFESSOR OF PHYSIOLOGY
IN SIMMONS COLLEGE, BOSTON

SECOND EDITION, REVISED

PHILADELPHIA AND LONDON
W. B. SAUNDERS COMPANY
1917

*Nov
9/17/19*

No. 5609

Copyright, 1914, by W. B. Saunders Company. Revised,
reprinted, and recopyrighted September, 1917

Copyright, 1917, by W. B. Saunders Company

QP
361
S85
1917 - ST 15

~~AM~~

Pisage

PRINTED IN AMERICA

PRESS OF
W. B. SAUNDERS COMPANY
PHILADELPHIA

TO

EDITH ARTHUR BECKLER

Co-worker and Friend:

My colleague in developing the instruction in Hygiene
in Simmons College



PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION

THE emphasis placed upon Hygiene in the first edition of this book will be found even more marked in the revision. The chief additions have been to the later chapters. The course pursued has been dictated by the availability of other books treating of the structure and functioning of the nervous system, notably of Herrick's "Introduction to Neurology." With such works of reference at hand there seems to be little reason to amplify the elementary description attempted here.

The number of specific references has been considerably increased.

P. G. S.

September, 1917.

P R E F A C E

THERE are several excellent books devoted to the anatomy of the nervous system, there are others which treat of its physiology in an illuminating way, and others still which deal with its hygiene. If the present volume is not to be an impertinence, it must be justified by its attempt to combine some elements of the three. The intention has been to present no more anatomy than is essential to an appreciation of the correlated physiology and to subordinate the physiology, in its turn, to the teaching of hygiene.

In the chapters which deal with structure and function the writer has tried to gather his material from authoritative sources. In those occupied more largely with hygiene, personal judgments have doubtless found expression. But the desire has been not so much to dictate in a dogmatic spirit as to open important matters to fuller discussion.

Many associates have contributed to the making of this book. From the number it is just to mention Professor Ernest G. Martin, of Harvard, whose suggestions have been numerous and valuable.

P. G. S.



TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
CHAPTER I	
INTRODUCTION.....	11
CHAPTER II	
THE MINUTE STRUCTURE OF THE NERVOUS TISSUES.....	22
CHAPTER III	
THE ELEMENTS OF NERVE PHYSIOLOGY.....	36
CHAPTER IV	
REFLEXES.....	49
CHAPTER V	
THE GENERAL ANATOMY OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM.....	60
CHAPTER VI	
THE AFFERENT PART OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM.....	75
CHAPTER VII	
THE NEUROMUSCULAR MECHANISM.....	85
CHAPTER VIII	
THE NEUROMUSCULAR SYSTEM: NEUROMUSCULAR FATIGUE..	102
CHAPTER IX	
THE AUTONOMIC NERVOUS SYSTEM.....	115

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER X

	PAGE
THE CEREBRUM	128

CHAPTER XI

THE CEREBRUM AND HUMAN DEVELOPMENT.....	143
---	-----

CHAPTER XII

THE CEREBRUM AND THE LIFE OF THE INDIVIDUAL.....	154
--	-----

CHAPTER XIII

EMOTION.....	166
--------------	-----

CHAPTER XIV

SLEEP	176
-------------	-----

CHAPTER XV

DREAMS	189
--------------	-----

CHAPTER XVI

CAUSES OF NERVOUS IMPAIRMENT.....	198
-----------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XVII

NEURASTHENIA	210
--------------------	-----

CHAPTER XVIII

SOME MATTERS OF GENERAL HYGIENE.....	224
--------------------------------------	-----

INDEX.....	235
------------	-----

THE NERVOUS SYSTEM AND ITS CONSERVATION

CHAPTER I INTRODUCTION TISSUES

BEFORE the modern microscope was available, anatomists and physiologists recognized in the make-up of the human body various types of constituent substance or fabric. The different kinds of material recognizable were few in number and easily assigned to certain large classes. Comparison of one part of the body with another showed that the same forms of organized substance were found over and over again. The several varieties of material distinguished came to be known as tissues.

In the hand, for example, we find the skin, the muscle, and the bone, representatives of kinds of tissue contrasted in function, in physical character, and in chemical composition. Closer study of the hand would add other members to the list. When we consider the tissues with regard to the intensity of the life-processes taking place in them it is clear that this is anything but a constant quantity. In some cases we have to do with structures which are essentially passive in their nature and which might conceivably be replaced by non-living substitutes. This is true of those tissues which are described as *connective*. Their service is mechanical; they unite and support other tissues. Bone is a conspicuous example of

this class, and very much as the skeleton determines the general form of the body, so each organ is to be thought of as possessing a minor framework of material which behaves for the most part as though it were not really alive.

It is usual to place the tissues in four large groups. Besides the connective, to which reference has just been made, we speak of the epithelial, the muscular or contractile, and the nervous. *Epithelial tissues* are those which form surface layers, either internal or external. They are the linings and the coverings of the organs. The skin, or at least its superficial portion, is an obvious example. While all the epithelia answer to the description of "coverings or linings," they vary widely in other respects. Under the general term are included structures as unlike as the calloused sole of the foot, the exquisitely clear cornea of the eye, and the excessively thin partitions interposed between the blood and the air in the lungs. Judging the epithelial tissues by their share in the total of the life-processes, we may say that they have both passive and active parts to perform. In some places their function is merely protective; in others they have well-marked chemical activity. Secretion and absorption are epithelial duties, and neither the one nor the other could be carried out in its fulness by membranes not living.

Contractile tissues are those which originate the movements of the parts of the body. Organized into large masses, they form the familiar muscles. The heart is mainly composed of a peculiar contractile material which is responsible for its beating. The same property is manifested by elements found in the walls of the alimentary canal, the blood-vessels, the urinary bladder, the uterus, and other hollow viscera. It is evident that the contractile tissues are eminently "alive"—that no lifeless substances could be expected to behave as they do. Three principal varieties are recognized, conveniently distinguished as the skeletal, the cardiac, and the visceral

—names which go far to denote the region where each is discovered.

The *nervous tissues* are far less conspicuous in an anatomic sense than the three orders just enumerated. Let us imagine for a moment that each of the four divisions in which we have placed the tissues could be presented separately to view. Four human figures would appear before us. That one composed wholly of connective tissue would consist of the skeleton as a basis, and would show, in addition, an indication of each organ in outline, with an internal system of interlacing strands. It would include the ligaments which join bone with bone, the cartilages which also occur about the joints as well as in some other localities, and the tendons uniting muscles with bones. The muscles themselves would be blocked out in this picture by the surface membranes which they possess and by webs of non-contractile material within.

The second figure would retain the complete contour of the human form, inasmuch as it would have the skin. If it were transparent enough the cavities and external surfaces of the viscera would be seen defined in their entirety, but with spectral lightness. The alimentary canal would be traceable as a winding tube of great delicacy within another still more diaphanous. The blood system would be mapped in similar fashion. The interior arrangement of each gland would show a tree-like pattern of bewildering intricacy.

The third figure, consisting of the contractile tissues, would be fragmentary and discontinuous. To conceive of this apparition as keeping its shape calls for an extra stretch of the imagination. It would supply the chief bulk of the muscles and a fraction, missing in the other manikins, of the alimentary, circulatory, and reproductive systems. In a scattering way contractile tissue occurs even in the skin, where its presence makes possible the “goose-flesh” reaction. Although this third figure would be less coherent than the others, it would greatly exceed them in weight.

14 THE NERVOUS SYSTEM AND ITS CONSERVATION

What would remain for the fourth member of this uncanny series? It has been reserved for a reconstruction of the nervous tissues. A distant view of it would give the impression of a ghostly form with a more substantial axis expanding above into a bulbous mass in the head. On closer approach the axis would prove to be the spinal cord, the enlargement above would be recognized as the brain, and the filmy haze which completed the figure would resolve itself into many *nerves*, branching strands proceeding from both brain and cord and terminating in a cloud of finest filaments. These filaments would be found to reach almost every part of the body (Fig. 1). A large proportion would be seen to end near the external surface; a great many could be followed to localities previously determined to correspond with the skeletal muscles; still others would be manifestly adapted to make connections with blood-vessels, glands, and the contractile elements of the viscera.

By way of recapitulation the following statements may now be made: The human body—or the body of any animal of a highly organized type—owes its relative constancy of form to an inactive supporting system, the connective tissues. It owes its ability to move to the contractile tissues. The epithelial tissues are those which establish the boundaries between the organism and the environment; through them exchanges of gaseous and dissolved substances take place. The service of the nervous tissues remains to be indicated. The task is to occupy us throughout the present volume. But a condensed preliminary discussion is desirable.

If a word is sought which shall convey a general idea of the work of the nervous system, it is probable that the term *coördination* will suggest itself. The nerves serve to place various parts of the body in communication. This statement must be followed at once with the note that the communication afforded is *never directly from organ to organ*, but always by way of the axial part of the system. Thus, there is no unbroken nervous high-

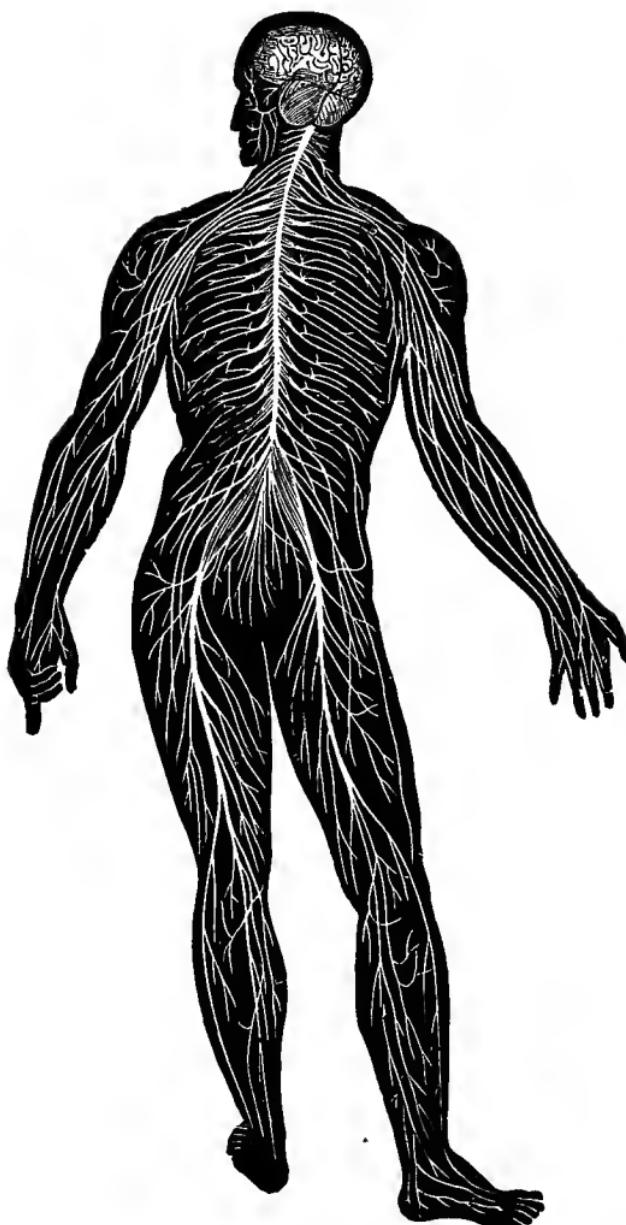


Fig. 1.—Diagram illustrating the general arrangement of the nervous system (Martin, "The Human Body").

way from the stomach to the heart, nor from one hand to the other. Yet the stomach may influence the heart, the central part of the mechanism transmitting the effect. The fundamental plan of the structure involved is that of a tree, and just as an ant cannot pass from one of the main branches to another without visiting the trunk, so all physiologic reactions employ a central link.

Coördination implies order, efficiency, and timeliness in the operation of a machine. These desirable qualities could not be realized in the living machine if it were not for the nervous system. Coördination is akin to *coöperation*, and the purposeful working together of all the parts for the advantage of the whole is accomplished through the aid of nerves and nerve-centers. A word which is now frequently heard in this connection is *integration*. The nervous system may be said to confer integrity upon the organism. This is to say that the unity or oneness of the animal is to a great degree dependent upon this feature. It is not entirely so, for we are realizing more and more that chemical products passing from organ to organ have much to do with the coördinating of activities.

Active substances serving such purposes are called *hormones*. Recognizing their existence we may point out that there are at least three possible types of interaction between parts of the body. First, the nervous conduction may be the sole factor. Second, a hormone traveling in the circulation may secure the response of one part to the need of another. Third, the two may be combined; a nervous reaction may cause the release of hormones with wide-spread secondary effects.¹

If the nervous tissues could be instantly eliminated from the body of a dog without doing other injury, the life processes would not immediately cease, but they would become local and partial. They could no longer be combined to the advantage of the animal. The nervous system confers upon the associated tissues the right to rank as an *individual*.

¹ Shäfer, "The Endocrine Organs," Longmans, New York, 1916.

It is scarcely possible to use the word "individual" without introducing the idea of a self-conscious being. One's own nervous system is, in part, demonstrated to one through personal consciousness. This is the field of psychology. The physiologist is more properly a student of the objective than the subjective, and he is occupied for the most part with observing the reactions mediated by nervous systems other than his own. Yet it may be claimed that there is a considerable borderland common to the two branches of science within which it behooves both the psychologist and the physiologist to make ventures. It is fortunate, nevertheless, that a great many facts can be noted and discussed without any reference to supposed mental states in animals.

We can deal with all the reactions brought about through the nerve-centers in the simpler animals without assuming psychic accompaniments, and the same method carries us very far with our attempted analysis of nerve physiology in the higher forms. A man cannot regard his own brain in quite the same way in which he regards his liver, but when he is bent on studying the living nervous system in a frog, a cat, or even in another human being his immediate concern is with what it *does*—not with what is *felt* while the action is in progress. Eventually he is obliged to consider sensation in connection with his other problems, but it is well to defer as long as possible the admission of psychologic elements.

In accordance with what has been said, an objective treatment of the nervous system will be pursued for the present. The nerves will be looked upon as conductors of energy. The chief source of this energy will be recognized in the external forces which are brought to bear upon the organism and which are termed *stimuli*. The destination of the currents of energy will be found in the contractile and secreting tissues whose activities they modify. Life that is not one's own is manifested through movement, heat production, and secretion; it is very rarely that we are obliged to take other responses into

account. Attention must be directed to the fact that nervous tissues separated from others can scarcely give clear evidence of their internal changes. Muscles and glands are required to testify to what is passing in the governing mechanism. (Except for certain electric signs of very slight intensity we should not be able to decide whether a detached portion of a nerve-trunk were living or lifeless.)

RECEPTORS; ADJUSTORS; EFFECTORS

These three words have recently been used to develop a most simple and helpful outline of the general work of the nervous system. Whether we consider a worm, an insect, a reptile, or a mammal, three departments of organization with functions of three orders can be indicated. The receptors, as the name implies, constitute that department of the system which is subject to external influences. Receptors are wrought upon by pressure, by changes of temperature, by chemical agents in solution. In the more highly developed animals they include particular sense organs like the eye and the ear. Such organs translate vibratory energy of the ether and the air respectively into the form of energy which nerves convey.

It is to be noted that receptors may be strictly part of the nervous system, as where naked endings of the fibers lie exposed to contacts, or they may be mechanisms made of other tissues serving to transmute and apply the energy of the stimulus. Where the receptor does not constitute a part of the nervous system the path from it to the central axis must be given a special name, and it is spoken of as a sensory or afferent path.

The effectors upon which the nervous system plays include the contractile and glandular tissues. The effectors are always distinct from the nervous system, and the fibers stretching out to them form efferent paths. The third class of working units, the adjustors, are those within the nervous system which mediate between the

receptors and the effectors, or, more accurately, between afferent and efferent pathways. It is in the realm of the adjustors that the utmost complexity of organization is possible. The variety of reaction so typical of animals which we call "high in the scale" has its physical basis here.

Parker,¹ of Harvard, has written most suggestively of the probable sequence in which the three orders of elements have acquired their position in relation to the nervous system of standard type. According to his hypothesis there may have been a certain lowly condition—possibly realized in sponges—in which contractility was displayed only in response to distinct and direct stimulation brought to bear from the outside world upon tissues having the power of movement. No separate and definitely nervous tissue would be requisite to apply the stimuli, but if such a transmitter should be evolved it would be evident that an efferent element had come into existence. Parker thus conjectures that the efferent is the most primitive feature of the three.

In the course of development the submergence of the contractile tissues below the exposed surface of the body would make it necessary that a receptor should be added. Its function would be to maintain relations between the exterior and the hidden effector. One receptor joined with one effector would form a sufficient means for bringing about one, and only one, reaction. The arrangement does not admit of any flexibility. It is the simplest example of what is called a *reflex arc*. With the addition of intermediate links between the receptor and the effector departments the reaction becomes less and less predictable. This is equivalent to saying that it becomes more and more like the actions of the higher animals—subject to reinforcement, suppression, or modification under the influence of changing circumstances. Many illustrations will be given later which will serve to clear up this matter.

¹ G. H. Parker, "The Origin and Significance of the Primitive Nervous System," Proceedings of the American Philosophical Society, 1911, vol. I, No. 199.

Excitation and Inhibition.—The common conception of the function of nerves is that they arouse activity. This is essentially true of those which stretch out from the central axis to the skeletal muscles, and which call forth the evident movements of the limbs, the play of facial expression, etc. The muscles involved in such movements are relaxed and paralyzed when their nervous connections are interrupted. It is because this fact is so prominent that one may easily fall into the error of supposing that no process of contraction or secretion takes place save as the nervous system initiates it. This is very far from being the case.

All the branches of the nerves which enter the substance of the heart may be cut, but the heart will continue to beat. Hence, we cannot believe that each beat of the heart is dictated by the efferent elements of the coördinating system. The power to make rhythmic contractions is resident in the organ itself; we say that it is *automatic*. In a less striking, but still positive, way other organs display a tendency to activity when removed from central command. This is demonstrable for the stomach, the intestine, and the urinary bladder. The contractile tissues which enter into the make-up of these viscera must be said to have a degree of automaticity.

When an organ has this disposition to be active on its own account it will be seen that the nervous system may exert a twofold influence upon it. The native, local process may be accelerated beyond its average rate of progress, or it may be restrained more or less radically. We say that tissues which possess the automatic property may exhibit either *excitation* or *inhibition* when the nervous system modifies their inherent tendency. It is probably just to claim that both with the heart and with the alimentary tract inhibitory effects are more frequently witnessed than are those which are clearly excitatory. If one is inclined to question this, on the ground that quickening of the heart-beat in exercise is a daily experience, it may be answered that this quickening is known to be to a

great extent the *withdrawal* of an inhibition previously operative. Withdrawal of inhibition is a form of counterfeit stimulation which will repeatedly call for consideration in later paragraphs. The slowing of the heart after exercise may be a more positive instance of nervous intervention than the hastening of its action, which seems so much more impressive.

As for the alimentary canal, it has become well recognized that its movements are actually observed to better advantage when it is removed from the reach of central influences than when its nervous connections are intact. It is not unlikely that there are a good many human beings suffering from indigestion of nervous origin who would have less trouble if their stomachs and intestines could be placed quite out of reach of brain and cord and left to work as determined by their own intrinsic properties. According to this view, suspension of the motor activities of the canal is a possibility easily realized. Acceleration may also be effected, but cannot be held to be so common and striking an occurrence.

When the first clear instance of inhibition—the case of the heart—was brought to the attention of scientists in the year 1845 it was received with surprise and, at first, with incredulity. All sorts of explanations were offered for the phenomenon, with the intention of proving that it was not a true suppression of activity. In course of time, however, inhibition had to be recognized as a power of the nervous system fully as direct and characteristic as excitation. It is now fair to say, as a concise statement of all which has gone before, that the duty of the nervous system is to translate the energy of external stimulation into *nerve-impulses*, to carry these to the central axis, and to apply them through the efferent paths either to arouse or to restrain the action of the contractile and secreting tissues. The nature of the energy which is transmitted along the nerves can best be discussed after we shall have obtained some insight into the microscopic organization of the nervous mechanism.

CHAPTER II

THE MINUTE STRUCTURE OF THE NERVOUS TISSUES

OUR Introduction began with references to the existence of a few types of tissue in the human body. These types have been familiar to anatomists for more than a century. A large share of the credit for their recognition and definition belongs to Bichat, a French worker, whose short life of only thirty years (1771-1801) was extraordinary for the extent of its achievements. Forty years after the death of Bichat an important step had been taken toward a more comprehensive knowledge of the way in which living matter is constructed. The doctrine declared at that time is known as the Cell Theory. Its establishment was directly due to a noteworthy improvement in the lenses made for microscopes.

The Cell Theory is to the effect that all forms of life can be demonstrated to exist as single or associated units of a certain standard kind. These units of structure continue to bear the name of cells, though the word became fixed upon them at first as the result of a misconception. It is not logical to use a word which properly means a cavity to stand for a more or less solid mass of material, but this is the actual practice. The biologic cell may be regarded as having the same relation to a cell in the precise sense of the term that a cast has to the mold. In short, the cell is a small parcel of living matter, the smallest which can continue long to have the behavior which we associate with the living state.

An average cell is microscopic in size. Many of those in the body would be found to measure less than $\frac{1}{100}$ inch in diameter; the red corpuscles of the blood, for example,

are only $\frac{1}{3200}$ inch across their circular faces. If there can be said to be a standard of form for the cell, it is the sphere. But this primitive form is merely the point of departure for the widest variations. The units in contractile tissues are always greatly elongated, those of epithelia are flattened, cubic, or prismatic, those of connective tissue are irregular and often quite freely branched. The

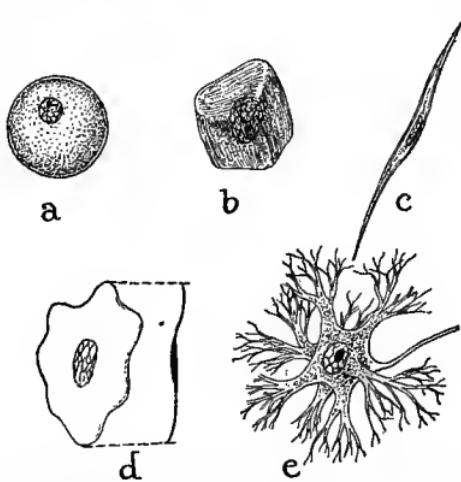


Fig. 2.—Drawings like the above are almost always made from tissues which have been prepared and colored by special means to make clear, minute features. *a* represents an ovum or egg-cell; *b* is a cell from a compact tissue, to show how mutual pressure produces a faceted or polyhedral form; *c* is a contractile element such as occurs in the walls of the alimentary canal, it illustrates an elongated cell; *d* is an epithelial or lining cell of the order found on the inner surface of blood-vessels; this is an example of extreme flattening; *e*, from the nervous system, exhibits the possibility of a branching development.

cells in nervous tissues are most peculiar of all, and must presently be described at some length (Fig. 2).

When such diversity of form is considered the student is disposed to ask: What have these differing packets of organized substance in common that the same name should be applied to them all? It is hard to say that any single feature is always to be found in them. One

24 THE NERVOUS SYSTEM AND ITS CONSERVATION

which is prominent in the great majority is the *nucleus*. This is a body within the cell, seemingly more dense than the remainder and unlike the rest in its chemical character. The last fact is proved by the individual reactions of the nucleus toward selected stains or dyes. When tissues are treated with such solutions, the nucleus, which may have been quite invisible in the uncolored specimen, appropriates the stain and stands out in striking contrast to the pale substance which envelops it. Exceptionally there may be more than one nucleus to a cell or, again, none may be discernible. Cells are said to be composed of *protoplasm*, and the word is often used as synonymous with living matter. Huxley called it the *physical basis of life*. The particular word *cytoplasm* will be found useful to designate the portion of the cell which is external to the nucleus.

The statement that tissues are composed of cells is open to some objection. Tissues are made by cells, but in the course of their development they commonly come to contain material of a sort which cannot be described as cellular. Such material is conveniently termed "inter-cellular substance" and it is probably always lifeless. Sometimes it is scarcely recognizable, while at the other extreme it may be so abundant as to constitute the main bulk of the tissue and to determine its physical properties and its value to the animal. Thus, bone is serviceable because of the intercellular lime salts which give it rigidity. The cells have come to occupy a very inconspicuous position, and though they continue to exert a needed influence upon nutrition, they are not at all concerned from moment to moment in the mechanical function fulfilled by the bone as a part of the skeleton. All connective tissue is distinguished by the high proportion of intercellular substance contained in it. The clear, glassy concrete of cartilage, the tough, white fibers in tendons and ligaments, the network between the skin and the muscles—these are examples of material which is not made of cells, though it was made *by* them.

It has proved far more difficult to gain a satisfactory knowledge of the intimate structure of the nervous system than to master the minute plan of other tissues. Students at the present time are by no means agreed in their interpretation. Fortunately, even an imperfect picture of the microscopic arrangement throws much light upon the physiologic processes observed. From one point of view it may be claimed that the chief office of the nervous system is *conduction*. We shall do well to attend first to the elements which are known to carry on this particular duty. These elements are the *nerve-fibers*; collected in bundles they make the *nerves*.

A nerve is usually assumed to be a strand directly or indirectly connected with the central system and large enough to be followed by the naked eye as the body is dissected. The fiber is too small to be traced in this way. Fibers bear a relation to nerves like that which wires bear to cables in which they are bound up. It follows that the number of the nerves is of a moderate order, while that of the fibers is expressed in millions.¹ Nerves are often seen to subdivide, but when such branching occurs the fibers are merely assorted; they do not fork where the nerve does, but are found in equal numbers in the trunk and in the sum of its branches. This does not mean that nerve-fibers never do subdivide, for there are important instances of such behavior, but subdivision is usually met with either in the central axis or near terminal structures rather than in the nerve-trunks (Fig. 3).

A nerve-fiber consists of a core surrounded by one or two sheaths. The double covering is the more common arrangement, at least outside the brain and cord. The suggestion of an insulated wire is strong. Here, as in the wire, it is certainly the core which is the essential conductor; the sheaths can scarcely be regarded as insulating material in the ordinary meaning of the word, but they are rather calculated to support and nourish the *axis*-

¹ Between 3,000,000 and 4,000,000 has been estimated. Donaldson, "The Growth of the Brain," Scott, London, 1895, p. 196.

cylinder or *axon*, as the enclosed transmitter is called. Investigation by refined methods has made it probable that the axon can be resolved into a number of very small fibrils. The idea that there may be conducting units finer and more numerous than the fibers as usually recognized opens interesting possibilities.

The protective sheaths are broken into segments at intervals of a millimeter or less and thus present a jointed arrangement. These joints are known as the nodes of Ranvier, and the fact is to be emphasized that they do not interrupt the continuity of the axis-cylinder. This goes on unbroken like the thread in a necklace. Nerve-fibers attain a great length; the longest are not much shorter

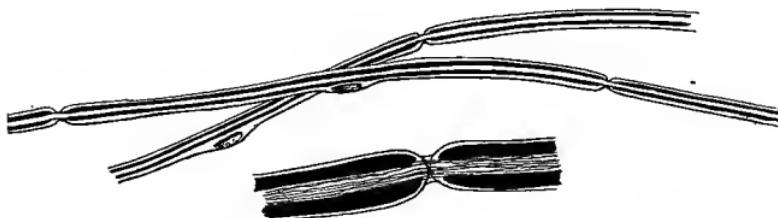


Fig. 3.—Two nerve-fibers shown diagrammatically especially to emphasize the continuity of the axon. A detail, further enlarged, to suggest fibrils in the axon.

than the entire body. They may in other cases be so short as hardly to pass outside a single microscopic field. We must now consider the manner of their beginnings and endings.

In studying the nervous tissues without the aid of the microscope anatomists long ago began to refer to two types which they called respectively gray and white matter. Most of the nerve-trunks can be decisively classified as white matter, and when we find substance of a similar appearance in the cord or the brain we may conclude that its organization is much the same as that of the ordinary nerves. We have already seen that nerves are bundles of fibers laid closely together and having a parallel direction. The microscope shows that this is equally the

case with other white matter. It is always and exclusively devoted to conduction.

Gray matter is far more intricate in structure and its physiology is less easily defined. It is massed for the most part in the central nervous system. Small detached collections, the *ganglia*, exist in other localities. An inspection of typical gray matter gives, first of all, the impression of looseness of texture. Nerve-fibers are seen straying through the field, but never in a compact formation. Attention is quickly attracted by the curious bodies which

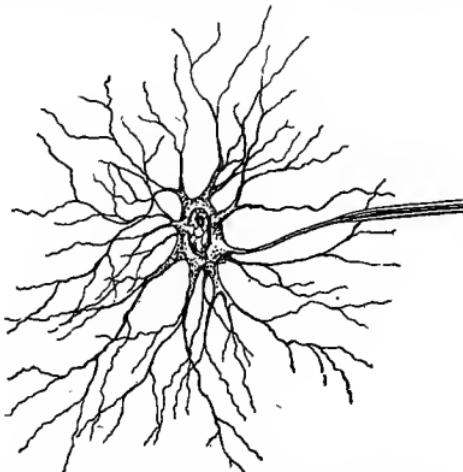


Fig. 4.—A common type of nerve-cell (or perikaryon) giving rise to the axon of a nerve-fiber.

are most characteristic of this tissue, the so-called nerve-cells. These vary widely in size, but probably have, on the average, about the same dimensions as other cells. In each one a conspicuous nucleus can be demonstrated. But the most remarkable features of most nerve-cells are the numerous processes which extend from them (Fig. 4).

It has been said that the cells in connective tissue sometimes show a highly irregular outline. The cells of the nervous system, however, surpass all others in this respect. Their protoplasm is spun out into prolongations

which become more and more slender as they branch until their ultimate subdivisions defy observation. Each nerve-cell, as a rule, has many of these brush-like extensions, and since other cells are near at hand the processes interlace in a bewildering fashion. A recent writer has likened the resulting situation to that prevailing in a forest where the branches of each tree penetrate among those of its neighbors. Looking among the foliage from a little distance one cannot tell to which tree individual twigs belong.

Keeping for the moment the illustration just introduced, it may be said that the observer could hardly tell whether the ends of the small branches ended freely or ran together. His information would enable him to decide that each tree is really quite without connection with any other, but he might not be able to determine this by his distant inspection. This represents with entire justice the difficulties encountered by workers who have tried to interpret the appearance of the gray matter. They have not been able to agree as to whether the processes of one nerve-cell are continuous with those of others or whether they merely mingle closely. Fortunately, the physiology of the nervous tissues can be discussed without the adoption of one view to the exclusion of the other. The prime fact has to be accepted that effects are produced by certain cells upon their neighbors.

A term which it is most important to understand is *synapse*. A synapse is said to exist wherever the branching processes of a nerve-cell transmit stimulating energy to the processes of a second unit. If there is no continuity between the two, the synapse is a place of contact or of close approach. If the adjacent units of the gray matter are really bound together, the synapse is the region of the finest subdivision of the protoplasmic bonds between them. If we speak physiologically, the synapse is a functional junction; it is not absolutely necessary to decide whether it is an anatomic junction. One doctrine implicitly held with reference to the synapse is that transmission across it can take place in only one direction.

The property involved has been spoken of as a "valve-action" (Fig. 5).

Most of the processes which spring from nerve-cells are of the branching character which has been described. They are called *dendrites* or *dendrons*. But certain processes are found to be of an entirely different order. These can be followed often for long distances from the cells which give rise to them, and are presently found to acquire the sheaths previously mentioned as enveloping the axis-cylinders of nerve-fibers. Just here we reach a most fundamental conclusion as regards the constitution of the nervous system: that each nerve-fiber—or,

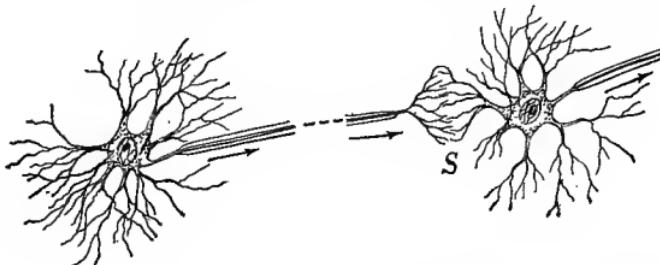


Fig. 5.—To illustrate a synapse (*S*), which is the functional junction between the terminal arborizations—*i. e.*, fine branchings—of the left-hand neuron and certain dendrites of the one to the right. Effects are secured only in the direction of the arrows.

more accurately, its central core—is the outgrowth of a nerve-cell. This defines the relations existing between the gray and the white matter. In the gray matter are the cell-bodies; in the white matter run their long processes, the conductors of energy in the form which we have called nerve-impulses. However far nerve-fibers may stretch from the situation of their presiding cells, their axons are to be recognized as continuous with the protoplasm of those microscopic elements. The axon in a long fiber may contain many times as much substance as the cell-body in which it originates.

A question of terminology now arises. If the axis-cylinder is part and parcel of the structural unit which

has its nucleus in the gray matter, do we do well to call the portion about the nucleus the cell and to imply that the core of the fiber is not to be reckoned as belonging to it? It is reasonable to claim that the cell should be held to include all its extensions, no matter how prolonged. Histologists have appreciated the force of this argument and have proposed words to denote more precisely the features under discussion. What we have generally called the nerve-cell may better be called the *perikaryon*, which means specifically "around the nucleus." We may also call it the cell-body, thus suggesting that it is the main mass of the unit, but leaving a place for the processes. When we adopt either the word perikaryon or the term cell-body we find ourselves in need of a word for the combination of perikaryon, dendrites, and axon (or axons)—in short, for the nerve-cell in the best sense. The word supplied is *neuron*.

The Neuron Theory.—It is now time to outline the conception of the anatomy and physiology of the nervous system which for twenty-five years has been the foundation of most presentations of these subjects. To do this will be, in part, to restate what has gone before, but we shall be led also to fresh considerations. The ideas to be explained are not to be received as surely demonstrated, but they have probably not seriously misled students in the past, however they may have to be modified in the future. New views are now urged by many skilled investigators and we must not ignore them. Nevertheless, the traditional picture of the nervous elements and their relationships remains convenient for teaching and diagrammatic purposes.

The neuron theory assumes that the whole system is capable of resolution into highly specialized cells of the nature already indicated. These neurons are said to be "concatenated," which means enchainied. The individual neuron is commonly supposed not to be continuous with any of its fellows, but it is supposed to affect and to be affected by them through synapses. The valve action emphasized above gives each neuron a certain regularity

of performance; it can receive stimuli at certain points, but it cannot communicate them at the same places. So also it can despatch impulses to other neurons, but they cannot react upon it. What follows is most important: axons are nearly always channels for the conveyance of impulses *away from* the perikaryon—dendrites are receptive in function. It is probably a fact that the majority of neurons are of the type having numerous dendrites and only one axon. The arrangement makes stimulation from many directions a possibility, but gives a fixed course to the resulting outflow of energy. Vast numbers of neurons are to be found in the central gray matter which have only short processes and which do not easily admit of distinguishing dendrites from axons, yet the distinction is assumed.

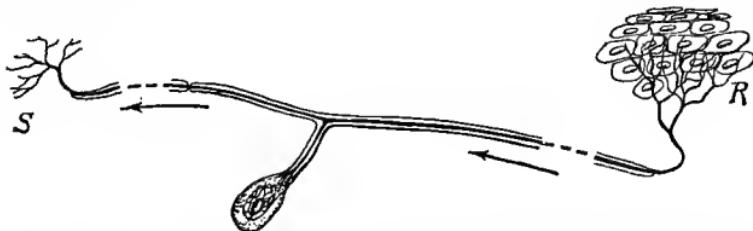


Fig. 6.—To show how in an afferent neuron the transmission is from the endings subject to stimulation (R) to a synapse (S) in the central nervous system. The perikaryon has an intermediate position and its functions other than that of maintenance are problematic.

One kind of neuron stands somewhat in contrast with all the other varieties, inasmuch as it has a smooth perikaryon without sign of dendrites. A single axon runs for a short distance away from the perikaryon and is then found to fork and to be traceable for a long way in either direction. This type of unit is peculiar to the afferent department of the nervous system. It is marked physiologically by the fact that it is not adapted to be stimulated by other neurons, but by energies acting from sources external to the nervous mechanism. In such a neuron the perikaryon is usually buried far from the normal operation of external stimuli. If it bore the ordinary

short dendrites and lay open to stimulation within the gray matter, this could only result in confusion of reaction and, in case sensations were aroused, in hallucinations. This assertion can be justified later (Fig. 6).

Let us consider in what various ways nerve-fibers may terminate. Those which serve the receptors are called *afferent*, those which act on effectors are said to be *efferent*. Most afferent fibers are parts of neurons like those described in the paragraph above; the perikaryon in each one is neither at the beginning nor at the end of the course traversed by the impulses. It is most often placed on what might be called a "spur-track," nearer the central than the peripheral limit of the neuron. It was long a question whether the passing impulses entered the perikaryon or left it quite at one side as they ran inward. There is some reason to think that they actually visit it. By a rather arbitrary stretching of our terms we may regard the section of such a neuron that lies between the periphery and the perikaryon as an elongated dendrite, and the portion central to the perikaryon as the axon. But it is not customary to call a fully developed and ensheathed nerve-fiber a dendrite, and this is the character of the conductor in question.

When we think of the limits of neurons in an anatomic sense it is well for us always to have their physiologic action in mind. If we do so we can speak intelligibly of *beginnings* and *endings*, the first being the receptive processes, and the second the terminals which transmit effects to other neurons or to tissues not belonging to the nervous system at all. The afferent or receptor neurons which we have been discussing begin, in this sense, where they lie exposed to stimulation by pressure, heat or cold, or chemical agencies. They end where they form synapses with other neurons in the gray matter of the central axis. To refer to beginnings and endings with this meaning is an entirely different thing from using the same expressions with respect to origin and growth. We cannot deal here with the embryologic facts.

The neurons belonging in the class of adjustors far outnumber the others in any system which can be said to be highly organized. Such neurons are, by the necessities of the case, intermediate between other neurons. They are stimulated through their dendrites and they are assumed to discharge through their axons. A single adjustor neuron may have a long axon and thus span a wide space, or it may be restricted in its reach to a microscopic scale. When the processes are short a large number of neurons in series may be concerned in carrying impulses for a very limited distance. Probably this kind of transference from cell to cell is measurably slower than the uninterrupted flow through the white matter. The units which we have termed adjustors may as fitly be called *association neurons*.

Efferent neurons receive through their dendrites stimuli which may have been furnished directly from receptor elements or which may have arrived by way of the adjustors. The efferent fibers extend usually to a considerable distance from the seat of their origin and terminate by making connections with contractile or secreting cells. When mention is made of efferent fibers one is most apt to think of those which excite the skeletal muscles—motor fibers as commonly understood. Neurons serving this purpose run an unbroken course from cells in the lower part of the brain to muscles in the head and neck; others similarly pass from the spinal cord directly to muscles in the trunk and limbs. Efferent fibers of other classes are usually, if not always, arranged in tandem fashion, with a synapse in their course, so that two orders have to be traversed by impulses bound from the brain or cord to many peripheral structures. This is the pattern followed in that department of the nervous system devoted to the control of the heart, the contractile tissues of the viscera in general, and the glands. Details will be added in Chapter IX.

We have pictured the nervous elements in the way which has been considered acceptable until quite recently.

But, as we have already hinted, the neuron theory is under a fire of criticism. We must take pains to suggest possible departures from the doctrine which may come to be established in time. It has been said before that continuity of protoplasm from neuron to neuron is assumed by many. The view that a synapse is a bridge rather than a place of contact impairs the supposed individuality of the units. A more important change in our conceptions may have to be adopted if the observations of certain students are confirmed.

The statement that the axon of a nerve-fiber may contain a number of fibrils, perhaps to be regarded as independent carriers of impulses, will be recalled. It is claimed that in some cases fibrils like these are to be demonstrated within the perikarya and extending out into the dendrites. The suggestion has, therefore, been made that everything else in the nervous system is subordinate in importance to a continuous network, slender

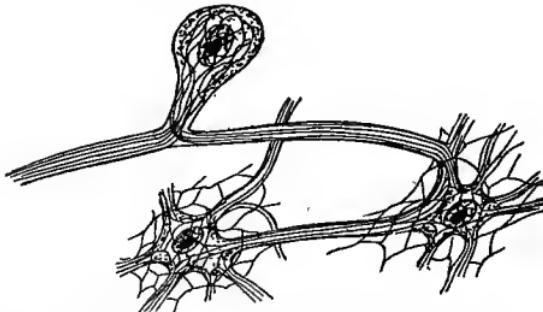


Fig. 7.—To illustrate the conception of the neuropile which subordinates the cells of the nervous system to a continuous network of fibrils sometimes within and sometimes without the cell boundaries.

and intricate. This it is proposed to call the *neuropile*. A synapse, in the light of this interpretation, is merely the place where fibrils pass from the sphere of influence of one perikaryon to that of another (Fig. 7).

The chief result of these recent discoveries will probably be to lessen the prominence given to the perikarya in

descriptions of nervous activity and to emphasize the part played by the fibrillar conductors. One interesting function of the perikarya remains undisputed. This is the responsibility for the maintenance of normal nutrition through all the processes of the neuron. No matter how far an axon may stretch from the cell-body to which it belongs, its most distant portion is yet dependent upon the influence of the perikaryon for its preservation in good condition. Cut off from its perikaryon it inevitably degenerates. This is a fact which has proved most helpful to the investigators who have sought to unravel the tangled fabric of the nervous system.

Regeneration.—When a nerve has been cut and degeneration has taken place, regeneration remains a possibility. This requires months for its accomplishment. New axons from the old perikarya grow along the track of the former set. It seems marvellous that they should push through to make appropriate connections, but they often do.¹ Of course, this may be prevented by obstacles in the path; if the two ends of the cut nerve were displaced laterally instead of remaining in end-to-end contact the outgrowth of the fresh fibers would not occur. Unfortunately for the human race, the reconstruction of nerve-fibers which we observe outside the cord and brain does not take place in the central axis. Injuries which result in degeneration within the confines of the central nervous system are anatomically irreparable. Physiologically, the accompanying losses are sometimes made good by the substitution of other paths for those which have suffered interruption.

¹ When we read of surgical operations in which nerves are reunited we must remember that the original fibers do not resume connections. The gap has to be crossed by new fibers. The object of the careful matching up of the two parts of the trunk is not an immediate restoration of conduction like that secured by splicing an electric wire; it is to have the old sheaths serve as guides for the fresh outgrowth.

CHAPTER III

THE ELEMENTS OF NERVE PHYSIOLOGY

IT was impossible to discuss the structure of the nervous tissues without anticipating to some extent an exposition of their working. We can now proceed further with this subject. We have chosen the word "coördination" to express the broad function of the system, and we have said that the chief property of its elements is conductivity. The simplest statement of the duty discharged has been said to be something like this: The receptors lie exposed to external stimulation, thence the effects of this stimulation are conveyed to the adjustors in the central axis, the adjustors distribute to efferent neurons, and by these the responses of muscles and glands are secured. It is now time to inquire into the nature of the external stimuli and the transmitted energy.

Stimuli.—A stimulus is a change, physical or chemical, which is capable of producing physiologic reactions. Raising the temperature of a selected area of the skin is a means of stimulation. Lowering the temperature may have equally positive results. The application of pressure at any spot whence it may be conducted to underlying receptors is an instance of mechanical stimulation. There are in the surface of the tongue receptors which can be excited by various dissolved substances. Here we have an example of chemical stimulation. When the retina is acted on by light and impulses flow along the optic nerve to the brain there are probably two steps in the process: first, the light causes a chemical change, as it does in the photographic plate; second, some product

of the reaction behaves as a chemical stimulant. Electric currents—or, more correctly, changes in electric condition—are among the most valuable forms of stimuli for experimental purposes, though they do not play any considerable part in the natural course of events.

The power of a stimulus to elicit responses depends upon the magnitude of the change from previous conditions. This might be confidently predicted, but another equally important fact might easily be overlooked. Stimuli are effective not only in proportion to their amplitude, but also in proportion to the *rate* at which the change takes place. In other words, changes sufficiently gradual may fail of stimulating effect even though they are most extensive. Demonstration of this is secured most conveniently when the stimuli observed are electric; it is found that rapid shifting of potential is far more exciting than a slower change, while the alteration may be made so gradual as to lose all efficacy.

One more fact concerning stimuli deserves emphasis at this point. The withdrawal of an influence which has been operating upon the living mechanism may be as truly a stimulus as would the application of a new form of energy. Cold, which is to the physicist a negation, must be counted a positive means of physiologic stimulation. The same may be said of sudden darkness or silence. When the baby has gone to sleep the parent must not break off his lullaby too abruptly. He should rather employ a judicious diminuendo, when, if successful, he will have illustrated more than one biologic law. At sea we wake from sleep when the regular throb of the engine ceases.

In the early speculations of philosophers respecting the manner of action of nerves the picture frequently presented is that of tubular conduits giving direction to spurts or pulses of fluid. One is reminded of the pneumatic appliances sometimes used in church organs to transmit the effect of pressure upon a key to a distant valve. All such comparisons are wholly faulty and we

must utterly discard them. The nerves are not tubes, but cables, and even the axons give no evidence of any progressive movement of their substance. We have to do with conductors in which the material is stationary; this is an important limitation as we strive to conceive of the propagated impulse.

If we think of instances of conduction outside the nervous system we shall be attracted by the figure of a fuse. The spark which runs along the train of powder is the visible sign of a destructive chemical change. A protoplasmic strand might be imagined through which a similar chemical change should make its way, leaving behind it a track barren of further possibilities in the line of conduction. Of course, this does not correspond closely with what we know to be true of the nerves; they are adapted to carry impulse after impulse without showing impairment. The extreme resistance of white matter to fatigue has made it hard to believe that its axis-cylinders are in any sense "burnt out" in the performance of their function. We cannot think that there is any extensive waste of material as the unseen impulses travel along the paths laid for them.

Conductors of physical changes are not necessarily altered in the least by their service. An iron wire is not worn out by the passage through it of the electric current. It has not contributed energy from its own stores, as has the fuse, to reinforce that which ran from one end of it to the other. All the energy has come from outside the conductor, and when that energy is gone the wire is left sensibly unaffected. In the same way the harp-string, which is plucked near one end and is swept throughout its length by the resulting vibrations, comes to rest unchanged except for a trifling wear and tear. Here again the energy came from outside and the conductor gave up none of its own. The nerve-fiber seems much more like the wire that carries the current or the musical string set in vibration than like the fuse consumed in doing its duty. Yet we must not hastily conclude that a nerve-

impulse is an electric current, nor that it can be called a vibratory disturbance. We must not hastily abandon the idea that it has chemical features.

A chemical change occurring in white matter need not be destructive in character. It may take place in one instant and be reversed in the next with the restoration of the initial condition. Something like this must be true of the retinal cells in which the light-waves are momentarily causing photochemical reactions which are almost, though not perfectly, neutralized by the recuperative changes which closely follow them. It may be that when a nerve-impulse passes there is a disruption of molecules and an almost instantaneous recovery. It has been suggested that upon the passage of each impulse a slight contribution is made to the axon by the enclosing sheaths and that in this way the conductivity is maintained almost indefinitely. If there is any consumption of substance attendant on the transfer, we should expect to obtain evidence of the formation of waste-products in nerve-trunks which have been functioning for a long time. Until recently no such evidence could be cited. We have now the statement of Tashiro¹ that nerve-trunks discharge carbon dioxid in quantities detectable by his delicate methods. The production never ceases, but its rate is definitely increased by the passage of impulses.

One is constantly tempted to present the plan and working of the nervous system in terms of an electric plant like that of a telephone exchange. Nothing made by man is so like the nervous mechanism, with its channels leading in and out, and shifting connections to mediate between them. Moreover, as we have hinted, there is an electric change—slight, but definite and characteristic—which betrays the passage of each nervous impulse. The flying energy is, nevertheless, not to be regarded as an ordinary electric current. It has no such inconceivable velocity. About the middle of the last century Helmholtz reported that he had measured the rate at which

¹ American Journal of Physiology, 1913, xxxi, 22

the impulses pass in the nerves of frogs and that he had found it to be less than 100 feet per second. Recent studies have made it probable that it is considerably higher in man, but it is not by any means equal to the speed of sound-waves in the air.

Two investigators, Crehore and Williams, of New York, have recently attracted much notice by their contention that nerve-impulses are actually electric in their nature. By taking into account the dimensions of the fibers and assigning certain physical properties to the sheaths they put forth an argument to prove that electric disturbances should not pass very rapidly in nerves, but rather at about the velocity found to hold for the nerve-impulses. It is too soon to say whether physiologists will generally be won to this conception.

A most important question, and one which is proving difficult to answer, relates to the part played by the perikarya when impulses are passing. Do these spend their own substance to reinforce the transmission? If they do they are like the relay cells in telegraphic systems. Wires are not worn out with carrying electric currents, but batteries are used up in generating them. It has been the common belief that the perikarya of the gray matter do suffer disintegration when the neurons to which they belong are active. It is usual to say that when a neuron is stimulated through its dendrites there is a *discharge*, meaning by this an evolution of fresh energy at the cost of material oxidized or otherwise degraded. Assuming this to be true, we shall have an outflow of energy greater than that applied as a stimulus.

We could, perhaps, imagine a nervous organization such that no energy save that originally applied by the external stimulus should be observed to flow from it. This would be economic to the last degree. But it seems unlikely that any tissue can ever become so specialized as to lose all trace of its primitive tendency to undergo some decomposition as a necessary part of its activity. When contractile elements are stimulated they respond

by a display of energy utterly out of proportion to that which was brought to bear to excite them. We say that the force they exert had its source in the chemical changes that took place in their protoplasm, changes that must have left the tissue in an altered condition and with a lessened potency for further performance.

A mechanical analogy suggests itself. Consider the operation of the lock of a gun. The trigger is pulled and the hammer falls, but not with the slight force applied to the trigger. It comes down with the power represented by the previous tension of the strong coiled spring. The "stimulus" released an internal store of energy. This is representative of the conditions exhibited by muscles, and it is probable that with the neurons there is a difference only in degree, not in kind. When we think of the trifling amount of those forces which often prove sufficient to produce extensive reactions of the organism we can hardly doubt that the currents which are started from the receptors receive a very marked reinforcement at the cost of the gray matter.

We have some definite evidence bearing upon this point. If the perikarya make contributions from their own stores to forward the nerve-impulses we may expect them to show fatigue and structural change in connection with long-sustained action. Changes associated with activity have been frequently described. Some years ago Hodge announced that there is a clear difference between the outline and internal appearance of the perikarya in the gray matter of animals killed after a night's sleep and the corresponding features as seen in specimens from animals killed at the close of the day. He obtained his material from birds whose intense life-processes might be expected to make them most favorable subjects. The statements of Hodge have been widely confirmed. We must discuss this important matter again in connection with the topic of fatigue.

One strong piece of evidence for the view that the cell-bodies are contributors and not merely transmitters of

energy received is found in the phenomenon of "after-discharge." If a muscle is stimulated by way of its nerve it ceases to contract promptly upon the cessation of stimulation. If it is excited through gray matter the activity may continue for some time after the artificial cause has been withdrawn. The obvious inference is that the cell-bodies prolong the reaction by definite work of their own.

We shall assume provisionally that nerve-impulses may be set going in the conducting pathways either by the direct effect of external stimuli or by the chemical changes occurring in the perikarya. The impulses that run along the afferent (receptive) channels are originated in a relatively direct manner by external forces. Those that traverse the adjustors and run out to the effectors may be thought of as the afferent currents which have continued through the synapses of the central axis, but we shall probably do well to regard them rather as relays, that is, impulses started anew from perikarya excited to "discharge." This view, according to which the energy of the transmission is reinforced by each neuron in the series, is the older doctrine and is still dominant.

Attention must now be called to the relative ease with which neurons will respond to stimuli applied at different points. It is most necessary for the orderly and purposeful working of the nervous system that nerve-fibers shall not be easily excited save at their specialized beginnings or endings. It is, in fact, difficult to stimulate a nerve at any intermediate point in its course. When we do use sufficiently positive means to make the stimulation effective the result is such as to remind us that it would be undesirable to have it a common incident. A blow on the elbow may be forcible enough to start impulses in the afferent fibers of the nerve which lies near the surface at that spot, and it instantly seems to the subject that he has sensations pertaining to the wrist and fingers. He has excited to activity the axons which have habitually brought impulses from the hand, and they still awaken the same associations as though they had come

over the whole distance. This is a very significant matter and it will be wise to place further emphasis upon it.

When an electric door-bell rings, the householder is usually justified in the assumption that some one is outside ringing it. Yet it might happen that a short-circuit at some point along the course of the wires should cause the signal. The ringing of the bell when occasioned in this abnormal way would have the same qualities to the ear that had previously become familiar. So it is with our sensations; we rely on the regularity of their external causation, but we are always liable to be misled by an experience like the tingle that follows the rap on the elbow. Impulses started anywhere between the periphery and the central stations have the same consequences for us as though they had been initiated at the remotest terminal structures. The more one reflects on this fact, the more one marvels at the freedom from confusing hallucinations which we usually enjoy.

Are nerve-impulses all alike? This is a most interesting question. The first disposition will be for one to say that they must vary widely in nature to produce such dissimilar effects. But most of our physiologic progress has been found consistent with the idea that they vary chiefly in intensity and frequency and not in the more subtle ways which might be conceived. The reader must be reminded that two electric currents precisely alike in themselves may cause utterly unlike phenomena if they are led through different fixtures. The closing of one circuit, for example, may ring a bell; the closing of another may light a gas-jet. It is, for the most part, quite as unnecessary to suppose that different nerves carry impulses of contrasted character as to assume that the electric currents are mysteriously differentiated in the case cited. The clarifying view that they are essentially similar throughout the whole system is one which we owe primarily to the great physiologist, Johannes Müller (1801–1858). The theory encounters many difficulties,

particularly in connection with vision and smell, but is not to be prematurely abandoned.

Teaching experience shows that students find it exceedingly hard to believe that the impulses passing along various nerve-trunks are of one unvarying character. The instructor is at great pains to dissuade them from speaking of "messages" or "sensations" in this connection. Messages and sensations are evolved from nerve-impulses only by a process of translation; these highly colored words cannot properly be applied to the energy in transit. Psychologists have entertained and disciplined their pupils by suggesting what would be the result of diverting the impulses from one sense organ so that they should enter the brain over a route normally belonging to a different receptor system. The favorite proposition is to demand that impulses originating in the eye be switched to the auditory path, and that those generated in the ear be led into the brain along the fibers of the optic nerve. The subject must then hear all that he used to see and see all that he formerly heard. The lightning will be for him a short, sharp sound, and the thunder a prolonged, flickering light. At a concert he will hear the lights, the decorations, and the costumes, but he will have the extraordinary privilege of seeing the progressions of the music. We cannot anticipate at all how it will look.

Unprofitable as such flights may appear, they at least afford a clear recognition of the "Müllerian principle." According to this the diverse effects produced by nerve-impulses in various cases are due entirely to the direction which these impulses are made to take within the nervous system, and not at all to their own variability. Moreover, the effects of stimulation must be determined far more by the choice of fibers to be acted upon than by the kind of stimulation employed. The optic fibers are usually made to bear impulses which have been initiated in the retina under the influence of light, but it is possible to start impulses along these same fibers by other means. Thus, it is recalled from the old days of surgery without

anesthetics that the cutting of the optic nerve—a form of mechanical stimulation—was not productive of pain beyond that already being endured, but of the sensation of a flash of light. It is not certain that we can always adhere strictly to the doctrine of the uniform character of the nerve-impulses, but to do so as far as possible makes for clearness.

It is well just here to refer to a phenomenon often held to be mysterious, though readily explained. This is the persistence, after amputation, of sensations long associated with the member that has now been lost. The experience is said to be vivid and distressing. Spiritualistic theories have been advanced with regard to it. But, after all, it is just what we ought to expect. The stump contains all the fibers that were formerly concerned in bringing the impulses from the missing limb. If certain ones are subjected to unusual tension or pressure in the readjustment of the tissues attendant upon the healing process, impulses may be started along the old channels. All the associations of the resulting sensations will be with the peripheral localities from which impulses used to arrive over these routes.

The usual belief has been that while nerve-impulses do not vary in kind, they do vary in intensity. Even this possibility has been challenged by Adrian.¹ He has furnished good evidence to show that if a stimulus is adequate it produces a nerve-impulse of a fixed intensity. Nothing is gained by stronger stimulation. Two facts may be mentioned which account for apparent contradictions of this principle: (1) one impulse may seem stronger than another because a larger number of fibers are conducting and (2) a rapid succession of impulses may give results not obtained with a slower rhythm.

Summary.—We are now in a position to sum up the substance of the last few pages. The white matter of the nervous system serves to conduct impulses—which can usually be considered quite lacking in individuality—to and from places in the gray matter. The paths in the

¹ Journal of Physiology, 1913, xlvi, 412.

white matter are permanent. For the most part, at least, they exist from infancy and are changed only by gross pathologic processes. Conductivity, the course a fixed one, is the distinctive property of the fibers as it is of electric wires. If this is true, what shall we say of the gray matter? We shall be inclined to credit it with the power of reinforcement, as already pointed out, but here too we must continue to emphasize the duty of conducting. A most important difference between the contrasted kinds of nervous tissue is found in the varying direction taken by impulses traversing the gray matter at different times as compared with the inflexible behavior of the white. If we liken the nerve-fibers to wires, as we have just done, we may find in a switch-board a partial analogy to the gray matter. Wires and switchboards both serve to conduct currents, but the latter permit the interruption and the resumption of the conduction and the most extensive shifting of connections between channels of entrance and exit. Similarly, we are brought to recognize that an inflowing stream of impulses of a certain intensity may under some circumstances be blocked in the gray matter, while under other conditions it may emerge to reach the effectors with results more or less marked. This property of the gray matter is spoken of as variable resistance. Often it is denominated *synaptic* resistance, on the basis of the assumption that it is the synapses as previously defined which so greatly change their conductivity from time to time.

A little reflection will convince one that resistance to the passage of impulses through the gray matter must have everything to do with the behavior of the organism. If it is temporarily lowered to a certain extent, reactions will be readily produced by stimuli of slight intensity. If it is lowered still further, the responses will become exaggerated, confused, and exhausting. Increase of resistance, on the other hand, will render it more and more difficult to evoke reactions. Life itself has been defined approximately as a continued "adjustment of internal

to external relations," and the biologic term, "irritability," stands for the capacity to make such adjustments. Evidently the resistance of the central nervous system must be maintained between limits not too widely separated if the good of the organism is to be served.

Not only does the resistance of the central gray matter vary under the influence of drugs and of the drug-like products of the body's own activity, but, what is of yet greater interest, it is modified by the prolonged use of the structure in question. In general, repeated reactions are secured with more and more ease. This is a fact of the utmost import; it will be foreseen that it must be the starting-point for any discussion of habit formation and even of education. We say that paths of easy transmission tend to become established in the nervous system in connection with its employment in a routine. These paths are the "ruts" of everyday speech. The evidence that they come to exist is found in physiology rather than anatomy, that is, in observed behavior rather than in visible structural features of the gray matter, but we cannot doubt that there are actual material changes in the tissue, though it is not likely that the most refined microscopic technic will ever make them recognizable.

It will now be apparent that while conductivity is the most conspicuous property of all nervous systems, it has associated with it, though in a varying degree, the capacity to be modified by use. The power to conduct impulses along fixed pathways with fixed reactions ensuing is highly characteristic of those forms of life which we regard as lower and simpler. The second power is obviously proportional to the rank which we involuntarily assign to animals. So far as they possess it, they have the chance to profit by individual experience. This would seem to be the same thing as intelligence objectively viewed. Complexity of action does not necessarily imply such an endowment. We marvel at the community life of bees, and we are inclined to endorse Darwin's assertion that

the brain of the ant is the most wonderful particle of matter in the universe, but upon reflection we are led to give cats and dogs credit for immeasurably superior organization.

An old ant is probably little better than a young one in meeting the exigencies of its environment. Maturity in the insect is a matter of size and strength rather than any acquirement of profitable responses to stimulation. But maturity in the dog means an acquirement of just such responses and it also means that dogs have individuality. The inherited nervous mechanism in the one case is all but rigid; in the other it is plastic in a high degree. We cannot deny to the ant some trace of this capacity for modification through experience; the ability to return to the nest seems to demonstrate it, but we do not expect to find it impressive. It will be noted that the plastic property is met with in those nervous systems which in the beginning of the animal's life are most inadequately fitted to meet the demands made upon them. We might conceive of a nervous system, as well prepared to make the necessary adjustments as is that of the ant, which should nevertheless record the unique history of the single life, but such a combination is unknown. Our chief interest is in the human being, and it is self-evident that the nervous system of man is, at the outset, the farthest from being ready to cope with the environment as it is the best adapted to register individual contacts.

CHAPTER IV

REFLEXES

WE have said repeatedly, in one form and another, that it is the duty of the nervous system to produce timely adjustments to changing environmental conditions. These adjustments are called reflexes. The statement has already been made that a receptor neuron linked to an effector is the simplest possible "reflex arc." It is now time to enlarge upon these matters.

The word "reflex" readily suggests the word "reflection." The elementary conception is of an influence brought to bear upon the central nervous system from without and rebounding to contractile or glandular structures which are aroused to activity. This is a decidedly crude notion and must be dismissed in favor of a more accurate description. Descartes, in the seventeenth century, attempted to account for the familiar reactions of animals to stimuli in terms like the following: "Nerves are made up of fine tubular conductors connected with reservoirs of a peculiar fluid in the brain. These tubes contain slender threads which are attached to valves controlling the outflow of this fluid. When there is a disturbance at the exposed ends of some of these conductors the threads are pulled and the valves opened. Thereupon the energizing fluid runs down the same tubes and enters the substance of the muscles, which are at once thrown into contraction."¹

This is not a correct exposition of the mechanism, but it is a creditable effort. It can be paraphrased in such a way as to lose much of its fantastic aspect. We can recognize

¹ Foster, "Lectures on the History of Physiology," Cambridge University Press, 1901, chap. x.

here the afferent fibers conveying a form of energy from the outlying region to the central organs, the resulting release of fresh energy there, and the conveyance of the returning impulses to the contractile tissues. We do not now believe that the incoming and outgoing energies differ in any such qualitative fashion as Descartes supposed, but we can recognize in his description the important truth that the efferent flow is much more voluminous than the afferent. If we consider typical cases we shall come to appreciate the striking disproportion between the two.

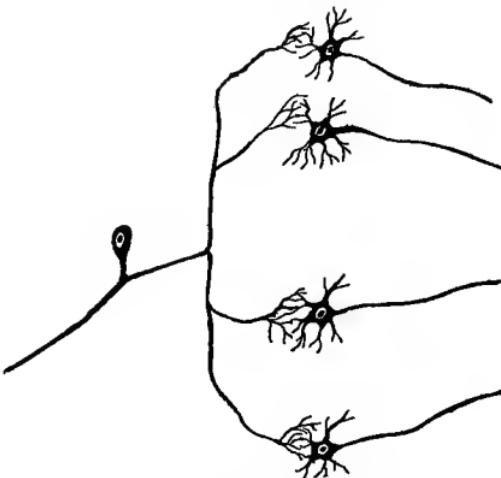


Fig. 8.—The afferent neuron influences directly four efferent neurons.

Take, for example, the wink which is caused by the contact of a minute particle with the surface of the eye. The area stimulated may be so small that we can scarcely think that more than a single nerve-fiber is concerned in the afferent transmission which follows. Yet to produce the muscular response a very large number of fibers must be made to bear impulses to the muscles involved. Perhaps the coughing reflex will serve our purpose even better. Here an irritating particle hardly larger than that required to cause the wink may act upon the central

nervous system from the larynx, with the result that most of the conspicuous trunk muscles are made to share in the convulsive response. It is easy to account for this spread of the impulses in the light of the apparent anatomic organization of the gray matter.

The general rule seems to be that one afferent neuron makes connections with a number of efferent elements. A diagram (Fig. 8) will be helpful. It is possible by an

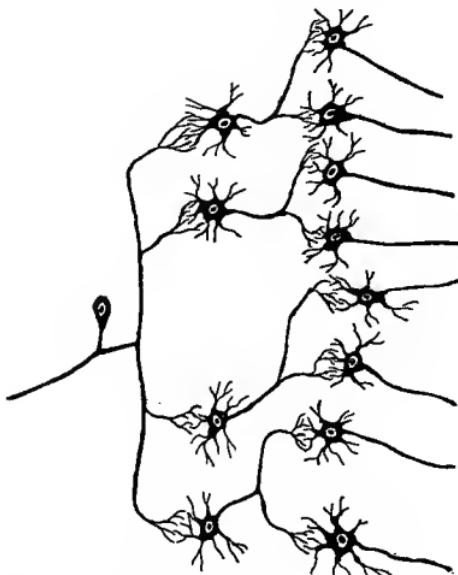


Fig. 9.—The adjustors extend the effect to a greater number of efferent paths.

extension of this principle to visualize a mechanism which will insure the most multifarious discharge of impulses after a solitary afferent conductor has been excited. But the painstaking histologists who have done most to interpret the finer structure of the gray matter believe that the spread of the process is accomplished largely through the interposition of neurons of a third order between those which are clearly afferent and those which are definitely efferent. These, according to our

preliminary classification, may be called adjustors or association neurons. Another diagram (Fig. 9) may be introduced to show the relation of the adjustors to the reflex act.

There is an evident economy in this arrangement. It brings large clusters of efferent neurons under the control of single afferent units. Moreover, there is no doubt that adjustors such as we have pictured are often dominated by others of a still higher order. Thus we see in the nervous system an organization like that of an army, in which generals are placed over colonels, colonels over captains, etc. In the army the number of officers holding a given rank is greater than the number of their superiors, but less than the number of their subordinates. In the nervous system this is probably true of the units in many of the particular mechanisms, but it may not hold invariably, since, quite unlike the military condition, a neuron may be under the sway of a number of others of the next grade above. This statement introduces the idea that now one and now another element may be responsible for the activity of the same inferior group. It also suggests that there may, in some sense, be a strife among the interlocking neurons. We shall have future occasion to dwell upon the conception that inhibitory as well as excitatory influences may be exerted by certain neurons upon others.

The following illustration is instructive: A man had climbed out of a sixth story window which he was to clean. He stood with his toes upon a narrow ledge, holding meanwhile to the upper sash. A gust of wind took off his hat and both his hands went instantly to his head. At once his body began tilting out into space. His hands fell with great speed and force upon the sash, which, fortunately, had not passed out of reach. Here a simple reflex, normal under most circumstances, would have proved disastrous, and was overruled by another making for self-preservation. In all probability no reasoning process preceded the second adjustment. But the train of reflections that followed was sufficiently vivid, and the

window-washer crawled back into the room and lay for a while upon the floor.

As we are constantly speaking of nerve-centers, it is time to define what is meant by that expression. A center is usually assumed to be a collection of perikarya mediating a definite action which may be either motor or secretory. We refer also to sensory centers, cell-groups upon which afferent streams of impulses are brought to bear. A motor center is generally a station to which impulses flow from different sources at different times, but which transmits impulses always to a common path. When mention is made of a center one thinks naturally of a circumscribed spot in the nervous system—an anatomic conception. But it is necessary to bear in mind at the same time that widely separated neurons may have such connections that they will be unified in their activities. In other words, centers may have a physiologic existence where there is no focal assembling of the coöperating units.

When we try to draw the line between those actions of the nervous system which can unhesitatingly be called reflexes and others not to be called so, we find ourselves in the midst of difficulties. In elementary presentations of the subject it is usual to distinguish between reflex and "voluntary" action, but the more we observe the facts, the less satisfactory this attempted distinction appears. It is certainly true that in most of those movements which we are accustomed to call voluntary we can still recognize the directing influence of external conditions. This is a way of saying that such acts partake of the reflex character. We find it most clearly the case in monotonous serial movements like those of walking. We say that we walk because we will to do so, but we can hardly claim that the formation of a conscious purpose precedes the taking of each step. At another time we may analyze more fully what can be baldly stated here: that each position assumed by the body and limbs of the walker establishes stresses within and contacts at the surface of such a nature as to dictate the appropriate succeeding contraction.

In the human subject the acts which are seen to be carried out by the newborn are always classed as reflexes. Sucking, coughing, sneezing, hiccups, vomiting, crying, clutching, drawing up of the legs, and other examples will occur to the reader. The list becomes much longer when we take pains to include some which are not so obvious to the domestic observer: changes in the size of the pupils, changes in the distribution of the blood, the discharge of sweat and other secretions, etc. Swallowing is essentially a reflex not to be executed unless there is at least a little moisture to stimulate certain spots in the lining of the mouth.

As to the reactions which the child acquires with advancing development, we find no satisfactory standard which will enable us to say of one that it is a reflex and of another that it should be otherwise named. The tendency is to restrict the term "reflex" to those responses to external stimuli which are common to all normal individuals, while those which are peculiar to certain ones we call habits or mannerisms. But the claim may be strongly defended that a habit is a personal reflex—an instance of a reaction to surrounding conditions given more or less of an inevitable character by the acquired structure of the subject's nervous system. Nail-biting may be regarded as an unfortunate reflex manifestation in which the maltreated finger-tips are sending up to the central axis the impulses which dictate further attacks upon them.

When we pass from habits to accomplishments we must still recognize a degree of connection between external stimuli and the performance. The act of copying a word or a sketch may transcend the reflex as commonly understood, but would seem to include its distinctive features. The copy set is a source of visual stimulation and the movements of the pen held in the skilled hand are determined by its appearance. Even the answering of a question, it may be asserted, is an act brought to pass in consequence of the penetration of auditory impulses through the pathways of a brain prepared to react to

them. But we shall follow the usual custom and restrict the term "reflex" to responses the capacity for which is inborn or universally acquired, and to acts which occur as surely when the attention is occupied with other matters as when they are themselves under scrutiny.

Our stock illustrations of reflexes are apt to be those in which brief and abrupt movements are witnessed. It is well to remind ourselves that adaptive changes of this kind may be gradual and sustained in character. One too easily overlooks the more continuous services of the nervous system. Physiologists apply the word "tonic" to such actions as are mild in degree, but maintained over long periods. Under normal conditions the skeletal muscles are incompletely relaxed; we say that the nervous system is subjecting them to a tonic stimulation. This subdued but definite activity of the mechanism is the result of the constant inflow of impulses from various sources; it has the reflex character. The slightly contracted state of the muscles is spoken of as a "reflex tonus." We speak often of an "arterial tonus," a sustained, moderate contraction of the small blood-vessels for which a particular portion of the nervous system is clearly responsible. We may not be warranted in saying that this tonic condition is equally with the other of a reflex sort, but its *variations* are so, and they constitute an interesting chapter in physiology—that which deals with the vasomotor reactions.

"*Conditioned Reflexes.*"—Most reflexes seem highly purposeful in the sense that they are such as to contribute to the well-being of the animal. In certain cases the purposeful character cannot be recognized and the reflexes appear bizarre and illogical. Some light was cast on reactions of this eccentric sort by experiments reported from a Russian laboratory¹ a few years ago. The investigators found it possible to yoke a novel stimulus with one which was familiar, and eventually to confer on the novel stimulus much of the efficiency which

¹ See Bayliss, "General Principles of Physiology," New York, Longmans, 1915, pages 477, 502.

at first belonged only to the familiar one. The following is a simple example: A dog secretes saliva when shown food which he likes. The reaction is what is sometimes called a psycho-reflex. The trial was made many times, and on each occasion a whistle was blown while the food was displayed. At length the blowing of the whistle without the exhibition of the food sufficed to cause salivation.

The acquired capacity of the nervous system to excite the salivary glands in response to a special auditory stimulus was called by the first observer a "conditioned reflex." Such cases afford a striking proof of the plasticity of the adjustor mechanism. Yet it may also be said that they afford evidence of its rigidity. In support of this last statement a curious fact is to be mentioned: it was found that when a dog had become so sensitized that he would produce saliva when the whistle was blown, his system remained quite unresponsive to notes a very little sharp or flat as compared with the pitch employed in the course of training. It is reported further that if a chord of three notes was used instead of a single one the sensitized animal would secrete saliva on the production of either of the simple constituent tones, but more for two sounded together, and most for the complete chord.

Have we not here something directly related to the mysterious *rappo*t of hypnotism? It seems strange that a human subject can become indifferent to all voices save one and yield abject obedience to that controlling voice. But it may be conceived that this is only an elaborate development of the conditioned reflex. When the hypnotic state was induced the nervous system became attuned to the particular pitch and timbre of the speaker's tones. It is said that these are well enough reproduced by the phonograph to make it possible to substitute the instrument for the hypnotist.

Probably we are all possessed of many conditioned reflexes. The reactions may be hard to detect and still harder to trace to their sources in past experience. Never-

theless, frank and intelligent people can often furnish illustrations. The most frequent are probably connected with the large intestine and the bladder. Certain conditions which have no logical bearing upon the functions of these organs will regularly arouse them to inconvenient activity. A friend of the writer cannot mislay an article and begin to search for it without having an immediate awakening of the colon to energetic movement. On some occasion in the past there was probably a coincidence of the two circumstances and a cross-tie between two mechanisms has remained. Such a tie has undoubtedly an anatomic existence, though we do not expect to have it pointed out postmortem in the mazes of the brain. Outbreaks of perspiration in certain circumstances may be explained in similar ways.

Summary.—The salient facts regarding reflex action may now be concisely stated. Reflexes are adaptive reactions brought about by the influence of stimuli acting upon the receptors of the nervous system. For their execution five conditions must be fulfilled: (1) The end-organs, or receptors, must be ready to translate the energy applied from without into nerve-impulses. (2) There must be pathways open for the conduction of these impulses to the gray matter of the central axis. (3) The central gray matter must have such an organization and such a degree of irritability that the arrival of the afferent impulses shall determine the departure of efferent impulses along definite paths. The fitness of the reflex to the emergency, as commonly observed, is explained by the physiologic linkage of certain afferent with certain efferent channels in the cord and brain. (4) There must be lines of effective communication between the central stations and the end-organs of the efferent system, namely, muscles and glands. (5) These organs must be capable of modifying their activity upon the arrival of the outflowing impulses. The change induced may be in the direction of increased activity or the reverse—excitation or inhibition.

These statements serve to characterize reflexes in a positive fashion. On the negative side we should emphasize their essential independence of mental life. We note the occurrence of many reflexes, but our consciousness is a matter of observation and not of initiation. The abrupt reflexes are "quicker than thought," while those which are gradual in their development are usually capable of passing through all their stages without our attending to them. When the will is enlisted at all—if we may trust our own impressions—it is about as often to restrain as to advance the process which we find taking place. Nothing is harder for the average student than to accept the view that these acts witness only to structure and not to present intelligence. If the scientific assertion is unwelcome, it may still be claimed that past intelligence is registered in the structure which works so smoothly. Holmes said that "habit is action in the present from motives of the past"; the conception might be broadened to cover the field of the reflexes. But it will be found unexpectedly difficult to defend even this thesis.

Voluntary Reactions.—If a man presses an electric key as soon as possible after hearing a sound, feeling a contact, or seeing a spark, he is said to execute a voluntary reaction, and the time which intervenes between the stimulus and the response is called the reaction-time. It is generally not less than 0.12 second nor more than 0.2 second. The values for different avenues of stimulation are somewhat characteristic; for instance, the response to sound is more prompt than that to sight. The process differs from an ordinary reflex in requiring attention to insure the movement. The path of the nerve-impulses is a long one, lying partly in the cerebrum and probably including many synapses.

When the lower eyelid receives an electric shock of sufficient strength there is a wink which is quite involuntary. This is a reflex and it is accomplished within 0.05 second of the stimulus. With a somewhat weaker shock

it is often found that the delay is three times as long. Such a case is a voluntary reaction: there is a sensation, a purpose to wink, and then the movement. This common laboratory experiment brings the two forms of response into clear contrast. Consciousness is quite incidental to a reflex, and, if it is involved at all, it is subsequent to the act and not connected with the chain of events leading up to it.

CHAPTER V

THE GENERAL ANATOMY OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM

IT has been possible to proceed to this point with only the most general statement of the spatial arrangement of the parts which are united to form the nervous system. A certain amount of detail must now be supplied. It will be helpful to make some comparisons between what is to be seen in the simpler vertebrates and what is found in man. No description of the invertebrate organization will be undertaken; it is most interesting but peculiarly difficult to bring into line with the higher type.

Let us attend to the outlines of the nervous mechanism as exemplified in the frog, an animal which has been chosen for very many of the cardinal researches upon this system. Here, as always, we recognize an axial or central portion and the nerves extending from it to all parts of the body. The axial portion is said to consist of the brain and the spinal cord. The brain is lodged in the cavity of the skull; the cord extends through a canal made by the successive arches of the vertebræ, the individual bones of the spinal column. Those nerves which take their rise from the brain are called *cranial*, the reference being to the *cranium*, which is the portion of the skull bounding the brain. The nerves originating from the cord are called *spinal*. The cranial nerves issue from the skull through openings which are called *foramina*. The spinal nerves find their way through notches between adjacent vertebræ, intervertebral foramina, as they are called. The number of both the cranial and the spinal nerves is smaller in the frog than in many of the higher forms, including man.

The spinal nerves emerge in pairs which are symmetrically developed. A single member, right or left, in one of these pairs is found to be united with the cord by two *roots*. These are best referred to as dorsal and ventral, the former being nearer the skin of the back and the latter at a greater depth. The relations referred to are best understood when presented in a diagram (Fig. 10).

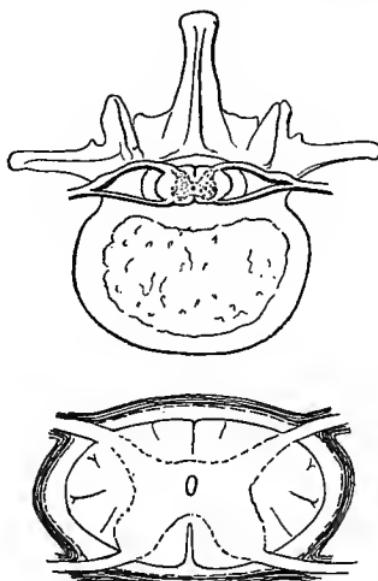


Fig. 10.—The upper figure shows the spinal cord within the arch of a vertebra. A pair of spinal nerves is shown, each nerve having a dorsal and a ventral root.

In the lower figure the heavy enclosure is the *dura mater*, the dotted line just within is in the position of the *arachnoid*, and then comes the space filled by the cerebrospinal fluid. The outline of the cord itself corresponds with the *pia mater*.

The same figure will call attention to the protective structures in the vicinity. Of these, the most striking is the bony arch. Within this is a dense membrane, the *dura mater*. A much thinner membrane is applied to the immediate surface of the cord and is scarcely to be separated from it; this is the *pia mater*. Between the two membranes there

is an appreciable space containing a clear, limpid liquid, the *cerebrospinal fluid*. Strictly speaking, a third membrane, the *arachnoid*, intervenes between the dura and the fluid, which is, therefore, said to occupy the subarachnoid space. The membranes with the fluid retained by them are collectively spoken of as the *meninges*.

The regular fashion in which the spinal nerves part into dorsal and ventral roots might well suggest a difference in function corresponding to the anatomic separation. It has, in fact, been known for about a hundred years that the dorsal roots are almost wholly composed of afferent fibers and the ventral roots even more dominantly of those which are efferent. The statement of this contrast in function between the roots of the two sets is known as Bell's law. The cranial nerves do not part in this orderly way into dorsal and ventral divisions where they join the substance of the brain; moreover, they are extremely unequal in size. Some are found to be composed of afferent fibers, some of efferent, and some of both together. It will be evident that each spinal nerve, if tested beyond the point of blending of its two roots, may be expected to show both characters. Most nerves are mixed in the sense that they contain fibers of both kinds. In the sum of all the nerves it is said that the afferent fibers are distinctly more numerous than the efferent. In the spinal nerves the difference is moderate; in the cranial, the preponderance of afferent fibers is overwhelming. This is owing to the presence in the head of the chief sense-organs, the eyes, the ears, and the receptors of the nose and mouth.

A cross-section of the spinal cord brings to view several features which may be described later, but at the moment only one of these will be mentioned. This is the minute *central canal*, a reminder that the central nervous system is to be regarded as tubular in its fundamental organization, though the walls of the primitive tube have encroached upon its cavity until the remaining space is very small compared with the masses of white and gray matter surrounding it. The slender central canal of the

cord leads forward to a much more conspicuous series of chambers in the brain. We can now outline the anatomy of this superior portion of the system as it is seen in the frog.

Following the spinal cord to the most anterior vertebra we find that it is here continuous with the tapering hind

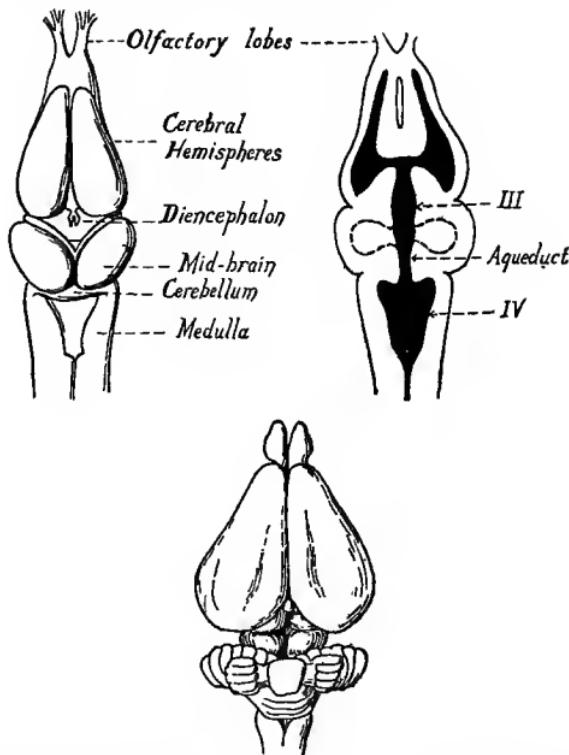


Fig. 11.—Above, the frog's brain is shown in its dorsal aspect and, within a similar outline, its cavities. The two lateral ventricles are not numbered. The cavities extending into the optic lobes are not made black because they are not characteristic of higher forms.

Below is the brain of the rabbit (dorsal view), to show how the midbrain is nearly concealed by the large cerebrum and cerebellum. (The scale of this drawing is much smaller than that used for the frog.)

end of the brain, the *medulla*, or bulb. The line of demarcation between brain and cord is assumed to lie between the back edge of the skull and the first vertebra; there is no

sudden change in the appearance of the nervous axis itself at this place. If the overlying bone is removed the several divisions of the brain will appear somewhat as in Fig. 11. The medulla widens from its hinder to its forward limit and the eye is caught by a deep triangular hollow, opening in its dorsal surface. The apex of the triangle is pointed back toward the cord. This hollow is one of the chambers of the brain, the fourth ventricle. Unlike all the other parts of the series of cavities, this one breaks the surface; the others are completely submerged and to be seen only after dissection. A thin roof which partially covers the fourth ventricle in life is almost invariably stripped from it in exposing the brain. The central canal of the cord opens out into the fourth ventricle at its pointed posterior extremity.

Forward of the medulla are found the two large, ovoid bodies which, with the corresponding ventral structures, are conveniently covered by the term *midbrain*. A channel extends from the fourth ventricle through this region to the cavities still farther forward; it is picturesquely named the aqueduct of Sylvius. We shall find the midbrain to be relatively much less prominent in the higher forms than in the frog. An alternative name for this region, applying more accurately to the dorsal eminences, is the *optic lobes*.

In front of the midbrain we find in the case of the frog that by far the larger part of what remains is the *cerebrum* or the *cerebral hemispheres*. We yet distinguish, however, a limited portion of the brain between these paired structures and directly before the midbrain as the *diencephalon*. In the diencephalon the aqueduct of Sylvius expands into a space which is quite narrow when measured from right to left, but more extensive dorsoventrally. This is the third ventricle. Each of the cerebral hemispheres has within it a cavity which is called a lateral ventricle. The total count of four ventricles is arrived at by reckoning these two lateral chambers, the third in the diencephalon, and the fourth in the medulla. The lateral ventricles communicate with the third by small passages.

At the extreme anterior end each of the hemispheres is prolonged into a brush-like development of nerve-fibers which comes into relation with the nasal lining on the same side. These extensions are usually termed the *olfactory nerves* and are counted as the first in the cranial series. No other nerves come into direct connection with the cerebrum; even the *optic nerves*, which are so much more important in determining the reactions of the more intelligent animals, join the parts just behind the hemispheres and affect them only after the impulses have been relayed or forwarded. The optic nerves are second in the series as we count from before backward. Other cranial nerves emerge at short intervals behind the optic. It will be better not to enumerate them now, but to speak of them with direct reference to the human brain a little later.

All the divisions which have been described as having places in the organization of the brain of the frog can be recognized in the brains of the higher vertebrates. Their proportionate development we shall find to vary widely from what has been pictured. There is one region only hinted at in the brain of the frog which comes to be a large feature in many cases. This is the *cerebellum*. Its position in the frog is indicated by a slight dorsal growth at the anterior margin of the fourth ventricle.

We shall now find it helpful to compare with the brain of the frog that of the rabbit, which will show a state of things intermediate between what has been described above and the human condition which must be outlined presently. If we ignore differences of absolute scale we shall see at a glance that the cerebral hemispheres in the rabbit are more massive than in the frog. We shall see also that the cerebellum has become a part of the brain only less conspicuous than the hemispheres themselves. We can still discover between the cerebellum and the cerebrum the surface of the midbrain, but this section which was so prominent in the frog has become much less so. It is evident that a moderate additional increase in the bulk of the cerebrum and cerebellum would bring

these two in contact and conceal the midbrain from view. Incidentally it may be noted that in the rabbit the dorsal aspect of the midbrain is scored by a cross-fissure, so that instead of the two lobes found in the frog there is a four-fold arrangement. On this account the region in question is known as the *corpora quadrigemina*.

A change in our point of view from dorsal to lateral¹ will make it easier to grasp the result of the progressive development of the cerebrum and the cerebellum. The figure will show how the midbrain is covered in the process and will suggest at the same time how the cerebrum rolls forward over the olfactory nerves, and how the cerebellum, extending backward, overhangs more and more the cavity of the fourth ventricle. In cats and dogs a stage is reached at which no glimpse of the midbrain can be had without forcibly separating the overlying parts.

To understand the ordering of the various divisions in the brain of man it is first of all necessary to appreciate this preponderance of the cerebrum and the cerebellum over the remaining portions. But there is another condition which enters in to complicate the interpretation. This is a bending of the axis upon which the brain may be conceived to be built up. In the frog a line drawn from the nose through the brain and back to the end of the spinal cord will be nearly straight. In the rabbit it is still true that the organization can be referred to an axis which is substantially straight. It is very plain that the attempt to project a corresponding line from the human nose through the brain and down the full length of the cord will yield a curve suggestive of a fish-hook (Fig. 12).

This bending of the axis is developed in connection with the carriage of the head which is appropriate to the erect position. The lower animals generally travel along the line of their spinal columns. Man moves in a line perpendicular to his spine; that is to say, he walks and gazes horizontally while his vertebral axis is kept vertical. The nervous system must be accommodated to this state

¹ Figure 12, upper drawing.

of things. The bend in its axis is well indicated by an outline of the cavities in the human brain and cord. The aqueduct of Sylvius is inclined ventrally from the line of the central canal of the cord, and the lateral ventricles in the cerebral hemispheres are extended approximately at right angles to this canal. The olfactory

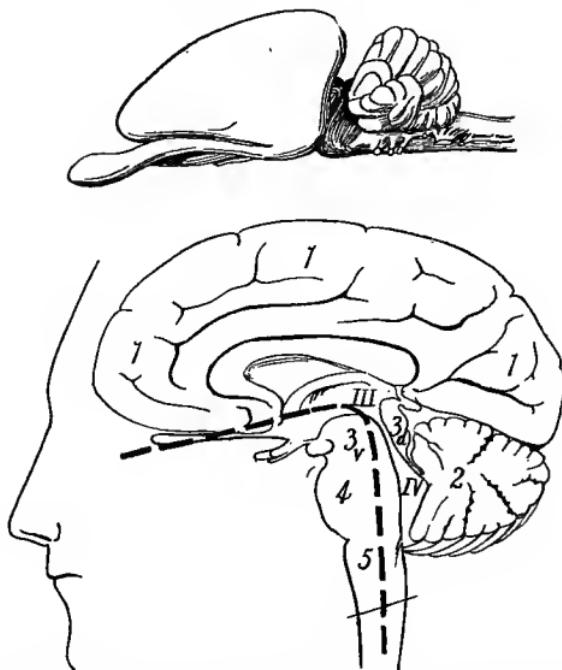


Fig. 12.—Above is the rabbit's brain from the left; below, the human brain in vertical fore-and-aft section, also viewed from the left. The bent axis is introduced in the lower figure.

1, Cerebrum; 2, cerebellum; 3, midbrain; 3d, corpora quadrigemina; 3v, crura cerebri; 4, pons; 5, medulla; III, third ventricle, which is flanked by the diencephalon; IV, fourth ventricle.

outgrowths are also found to be in a plane perpendicular to the course of the cord.

If, now, we make allowance for the two conditions indicated—the overwhelming growth of the cerebrum and cerebellum and the rather sharp crook in the axis—we shall find it easy to see that, after all, the sequence of the

divisions in man is the same as in the frog. It is true in both cases that the medulla is the prolongation of the cord within the skull. In both, the fourth ventricle practically breaks through the "roof" or dorsal surface of the medulla, but in man it is overhung by the cerebellum. In both types the aqueduct of Sylvius leads through the region known as the midbrain and widens into a third ventricle reckoned as the cavity of the diencephalon.

In the brains of the higher animals there is a ventral feature hardly indicated in the frog, but developed, generally speaking, in proportion to the prominence of the cerebellum. This is the pons (pons varolii), a structure which presents the appearance of an outgrowth from the cerebellum clasping the medulla near its anterior border. Of course, this does not correctly describe the actual connections of the region referred to, though it is true that it contains many transverse fibers which pass into the cerebellum. It is to be noted that the cerebellum is distinctly dorsal in position to the main axis of the central nervous system. It may thus be said not to lie upon the direct course of the ascending and descending impulses which enter and leave the cranial cavity. So it is possible, for experimental purposes, to remove the cerebellum and leave this chief highway still open for service.

The removal of the cerebellum, with the object of observing the deficiencies which follow and so drawing inferences in regard to its previous activity, is permissible. But the physiologist cannot excise the midbrain or the medulla for any such purpose, since he would lose not only the influence of the part withdrawn, but would check the passage of impulses to and from regions anterior to the seat of operation. The destruction of the medulla would leave no line of communication between the cerebral hemispheres and the trunk.

A few words may now be said about the distribution of gray and white matter in the central nervous system. In the cord the gray matter is internal and appears in a cross-section in a characteristic form often called an

H-figure. So far as the cord consists of white matter, it can be regarded without serious error as a huge nerve conveying impulses to and from the brain. Its gray matter serves to mediate simple reflexes. Yet it must also be remembered that the gray matter may bear a part in the transmission of impulses from one level to another. The gray matter of the cord shows two expansions in the course of its length, one between the shoulders and one close to the lower end. It will readily be inferred that these expansions provide for the massing of cells related respectively to the upper and lower extremities.

In the medulla, as in the cord, the gray matter is practically all internal. The **H**-figure, however, ceases to be distinguishable, and instead there are more or less isolated clusters of nerve-cells which in several conspicuous cases are in connection with cranial nerves. A large proportion of the substance of the medulla, including about all of its superficial portion, is made up of fibers. For the most part these run longitudinally, but at certain places, as revealed in sections, there are many which sweep from left to right, and the reverse, crossing the midline. The crossing of fibers continues to be a conspicuous character of the region we have called the pons just above the medulla.

In the restricted region which we have termed the midbrain we find that the corpora quadrigemina (Fig. 12, 3d), the four eminences which rise upon its dorsal aspect, are largely gray matter. Within, the alternation of the two types is somewhat intricate, but ventrally this part of the brain consists of fibers. The ventral white matter of the midbrain (Fig. 12, 3v) is seen just forward of the pons for a short distance, and it is referred to under the name of the crura cerebri. This is translated "the legs of the cerebrum," and the fact which doubtless suggested the odd name is that we have here a paired pedestal into which the larger proportion of the fibers coming from and going to the cerebrum are compressed. If a crude comparison may be admitted, we may liken the cerebrum to a great bouquet whose stems are gathered into the crura.

The cerebrum itself and the cerebellum present a contrast to the other portions of the brain when studied with regard to the distribution of gray and white matter. In them there is a surface layer of gray substance, while the interior—and by far the larger part of the whole mass—is made up, in the main, of multitudinous fibers. The surface layer is called the *cortex*, the primitive meaning of the word being the bark of a tree. Certain submerged portions of gray matter are found in the midst of the internal white matter in both the cerebrum and the cerebellum.

The human cerebrum consists of two hemispheres, between which there is a very deep longitudinal fissure. The separation of the two halves is so marked that one thinks of the walnut kernel with its comparatively slender isthmus. The comparison is faulty, however, in that the cerebral hemispheres have more than one bond of union. Their principal tie is to be found at the bottom of the longitudinal fissure, and when cut it appears in section as a white arch. It is the corpus callosum, a structure to which the physiologists of the seventeenth century ascribed much importance. Several minor connections are observed lower down, all adjacent to the third ventricle.

In all the higher animals the surface of the cerebrum is much scored by fissures. These are called *sulci*, and the convex ridges between them are spoken of as *gyri* or convolutions. Such a type of organization evidently provides for a much more extensive area of cortex than would exist otherwise. Since cortical development stands in some relation to the intelligence and general rank of the animal in the scale of being, one is disposed to look for an especially marked wrinkling in the case of man. The human brain is, indeed, much more fissured than that of the rabbit, but it is not much more so than that of the cow. The attempt to make a great deal of this feature yields but little comfort (Fig. 13).

Regions of the surface of the cerebrum are usually denoted by employing the names of those cranial bones which overlie them. Thus we speak of the frontal, the

parietal, the temporal, and the occipital regions or lobes. The principle would entitle us to refer also to the sphenoidal and ethmoidal areas, but these terms are seldom heard. The word "lobe," often used with reference to these organs, is, perhaps, somewhat misleading. It suggests a degree of isolation more marked than that which actually obtains. The temporal portion deserves this designation more clearly than do the others, since it is

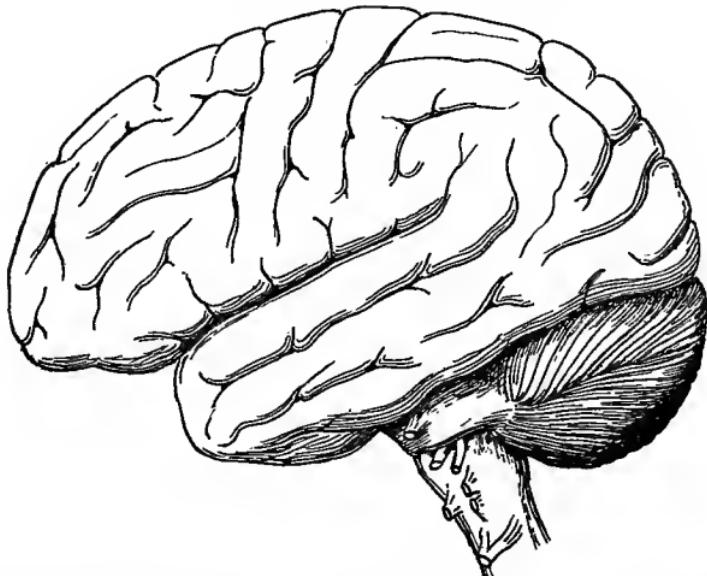


Fig. 13.—The human brain from the left. The main mass is the left cerebral hemisphere. The cerebellum, with its narrow convolutions, is below and behind. The medulla bears the stumps of several cranial nerves.

quite distinct—set off by a cleft of exceptional depth, the fissure of Sylvius. On first glancing at a figure of the cerebrum one recognizes which direction is anterior by the presence of the temporal lobe, pointing downward and forward (Fig. 13).

The Cranial Nerves (Fig. 14).—Twelve pairs of nerves are united with the human brain. It has already been stated that only one of these, the pair mediating the sense of smell, is joined directly to the cerebrum. These bundles

of fibers entering the under surface of the hemispheres constitute the shortest and most direct of all the paths which convey afferent impulses to the central stations. This fact is dwelt upon entertainingly in "The Autocrat

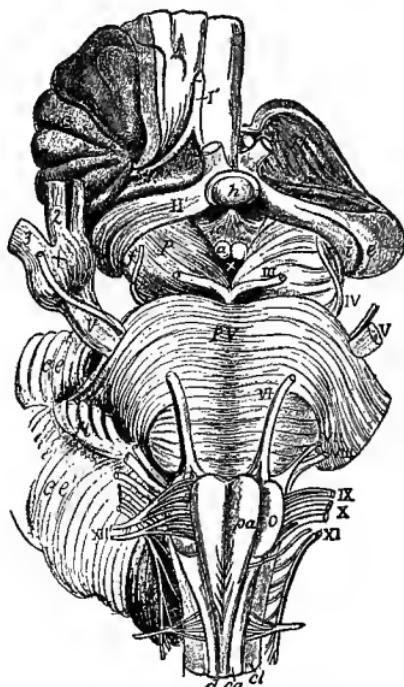


Fig. 14.—View, from below, of the connection of the principal nerves with the brain: *I'*, The right olfactory tract; *II*, the left optic nerve; *II'*, the right optic tract (the left tract is seen passing back into *i* and *e*, the internal and external corpora geniculata); *III*, the left oculomotor nerve; *IV*, the trochlear; *V*, *V'*, the large roots of the trigeminal nerves; *++*, the lesser roots (the *+* of the right side is placed on the Gasserian ganglion); *1*, the ophthalmic; *2*, the superior maxillary; and *3*, the inferior maxillary divisions; *VI*, the left abducens nerve; *VII*, *VIII*, the facial and auditory nerves; *IX-XI*, the glossopharyngeal, pneumogastric, and spinal accessory nerves; *XII*, the right hypoglossal nerve; *C₁*, the left suboccipital or first cervical nerve (De Nancrede).

of the Breakfast Table."¹ Considerably farther back we find the conspicuous optic nerves, the second cranial pair, reaching the base of the brain and appearing to cross

¹ Riverside Edition, p. 75.

as they meet. The feature thus produced is like an English X or the Greek letter Chi, whence it takes its name of the optic chiasma. Close behind the chiasma a short stalk depends from the brain and is connected with the *pituitary body*, an unpaired organ which is lodged in a hollow of the sphenoid bone.

The cranial nerves are of very unequal size and functional importance. A large one is the fifth (*trigeminal*), which enters the pons and thus serves as a convenient reminder that four pairs of the nerves are anterior and seven posterior to this structure. In this trunk are conveyed a great majority of the afferent fibers from the face, the front of the eye, the linings of the nose and mouth, and the teeth. It is responsible for a large share of human suffering. But efferent fibers are present also, and the chief muscles employed in mastication are governed through their agency. The seventh cranial nerve, springing from the medulla just behind the pons, governs the small muscles which are responsible for facial expression. The eighth nerve, entering the central axis very near the seventh, is the *auditory*, interesting not only as the pathway on which our hearing depends, but also for the part which it plays in the maintenance of equilibrium.

The tenth nerve is one to which reference must often be made. It is called the *vagus* or *pneumogastric*. Its striking peculiarity lies in the fact that it is not distributed so largely to structures belonging to the head and neck as to the organs of the trunk both above and below the diaphragm. Hence its fibers are, as a rule, much longer than those of other cranial nerves. They affect muscular and glandular elements in all parts of the digestive system, while certain ones end in the heart and are of particular interest because of the rôle which they fulfil in the regulation of its beating. Still others come into relation to the larynx. Many of the vagus fibers are afferent and bring impulses from the tissue of the lungs, from the heart, and from other localities.

As to the less conspicuous nerves of the cranial series,

74 THE NERVOUS SYSTEM AND ITS CONSERVATION

it is to be noted that three pairs (the third, fourth, and sixth in the enumeration) are concerned in the causation of movements of the eyes and in bringing about the adjustments for varying illumination and for vision at different distances. The six slender muscles which serve to turn each eyeball in whatever direction we desire are probably provided more liberally with motor nerve-fibers than any other muscles in the body. Our command over them is correspondingly perfect; we do not fall short or overshoot the mark in looking from one object to another. If there is another instance of such precision in control of muscles it is the case of those which act upon the cartilages of the larynx in the trained singer.

References: Lickley, "The Nervous System," Longmans, Green & Co., London, 1912.

Herrick, "Introduction to Neurology," W. B. Saunders Co., Philadelphia, 1915.

CHAPTER VI

THE AFFERENT PART OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM

THE great majority of the fibers which bear impulses toward the central stations have their receptive endings near the surface of the body. A minority come from localities deeply submerged and, therefore, subject to stimulation as the result of internal rather than external conditions. The function of all afferent fibers is to coöperate in the production of reflex responses; a certain proportion of them, in addition, carry to the gray matter the impulses which determine sensation. With the shifting of our attention we are continually consigning to the class of reflex producers fibers which but just now furnished us with the data of consciousness. Our interest in sensation is so immediate and overwhelming that we tend to underestimate the unobtrusive work of those afferent elements which at any given moment are guiding subconscious processes.

Nerve-fibers of the Skin.—The human skin has been computed to have an area of about 2 square meters. It is thus as large as a rug 3 feet wide and 6 feet long. Afferent fibers in enormous numbers lead from small subdivisions of this large expanse and no point upon it is far removed from nerve-terminals. Sherrington has attractively compared the skin with its nerves to the surface of a pond where many aquatic plants are growing. Their branching filaments are distinct from one another, but often overlapped or entwined. When a stone is thrown into the pond it stirs most decisively the growth on which it directly falls, but other leaves and stems will share somewhat in the disturbance. Perhaps in some respects the skin is even more like a marsh in which the foot sinks,

crushing the grasses on which it is set and at the same time pressing down an area much larger than that which it actually covers. It is precisely in this way that a pencil point pressed into the skin stimulates powerfully the nerve-twigs just beneath the selected spot, but extends its effect to others within a certain radius.

The nerve-fibers of the skin take their rise in part from fine ramifications among its deeper cells. Others lead away from special terminal organs of one kind and another. These microscopic end-organs (tactile corpuscles, etc.) have been minutely studied and will be found described in detail in works on histology. It is needless here to discuss the relation of the several types of nerve ending to the several forms of stimulation to which each may respond. In the light of what has been said already (Chapter III) we shall assume that only one result can follow the stimulation of a given fiber, whatever the means employed. If we are right in taking this position, we must conclude that the variety of sensations which can be elicited through the skin is made possible by a corresponding number of afferent pathways.

We derive from the skin at least four kinds of sensation—pressure, warmth, cold, and pain. As we have accepted, provisionally at least, the "Müllerian principle," we must believe that a fiber which is once found to give the sensation of pressure when it is stimulated can never give any other sensation. For the impulses, however they may be started on their way, are of an unvarying nature and take always the same direction. On their arrival within the confines of the central nervous system they must produce over and over the same set of effects. The only qualifying statement which should be made is that strong stimuli of any kind may, very probably, initiate impulses which shall penetrate farther than those originated by less intense applications. So, according to one theory, *pain* may be produced by a sufficiently strong excitation of any afferent nerve, its occurrence being the sign of an extension of the brain process beyond the

usual field. But the more generally accepted view is that pain is a sensation for which a particular nervous mechanism is requisite and that the nerves concerned can give rise only to painful sensory phenomena.

Experimental study supports the *a priori* deductions in regard to the multiple character of the receptor equipment of the skin. If one applies to the arm a heated rod of glass, one's first impression is that sensations of pressure and temperature—perhaps of pain also—are produced by stimulation of a single spot. But if the trial is made more carefully, employing a slender instrument for the test and avoiding deformation of the skin, one brings to light what is called the "punctiform" distribution of sensibility. By this expression is meant the existence of particular areas of very small size from which particular sensations can be aroused, while others cannot.

It is possible to mark off a chosen region on any part of the surface of the body and to determine within its boundaries the points which respond appropriately to four forms of stimulation by the four kinds of sensation enumerated above. Four sets of points can then be indicated in color, and if the cutaneous map is preserved for a time the points are found to be permanent. They must be situated just over the endings of four distinct though more or less commingled sets of nerve-fibers. It is now easy to see how more than one kind of sensation may seem to be produced when the skin is touched. If the object which makes the contact is rather blunt, it is certain to affect one or more pressure-points, while it will either give or take heat to such an extent as to stimulate neighboring organs which are sensitive to temperature changes. The skin is like a mosaic so finely subdivided that a close examination is necessary to resolve it into its constituent parts.

We must expect that stimulation of a selected ending in the skin by unusual means will give no sensation but the one proper to that fiber. It is, in fact, rather difficult to excite a pressure-point by forms of stimulation other than

pressure, but it is not impossible to do so, and the sensory result is reported to be still a sensation of pressure. A better example of perverse excitation is observed when a spot previously found to be affected by cold is touched with a rod which is quite hot. The spot is found to respond with the only sensation which can possibly result from its stimulation, namely, that of cold. So when any area large enough to include both warm and cold spots is brought into contact with something hot, the sensation has a mixed character and may be discovered to contain recognizable elements of warmth and cold. Indeed, the tingle which we call "cold" may be so prominent that for a moment we think that the object has a low instead of a high temperature.

All the afferent fibers from the skin are gathered into the many small nerves which are found in all parts of the body, and these in their turn unite with others until the total number of the trunks is small and their average size considerable. In these larger nerves, as has been said before, efferent as well as afferent fibers are present. If we exclude for the moment the afferent nerves of the head, we shall find the remaining fibers of this description parting from their efferent fellows when the cord is closely approached and forming the dorsal roots as they pass in between the vertebrae. Upon these roots there are observed to be enlargements, the dorsal root ganglia, and microscopic study shows that these contain the perikarya connected with the fibers passing through. As stated in Chapter III, these are of an oval outline, are situated on side branches from their respective fibers, and they are not provided with the ordinary short, branching dendrites.

Before the division into dorsal and ventral roots is reached the afferent fibers from the surface of the body will have been joined by a smaller but still immense number from deeper regions. Some attention must shortly be given to fibers of this class. It is evident that the stimuli to which they are subject must be chiefly internal rather

than external. Yet they are not altogether so. Strong pressures acting from without produce effects not limited to the skin, but extending to the underlying muscles and to other tissues. Muscles, tendons, and joints return to the central nervous system a host of impulses, the results of which are effective chiefly in producing adaptive reflexes, but also to some extent in consciousness.

The afferent fibers, whatever their origin, enter the spinal cord well around toward its dorsal fissure, and then, as a rule, each divides into an ascending and a descending branch. The descending branches are said not to run far before they terminate among the cell-bodies of the spinal gray matter, doubtless by synapses, through which reflexes may be brought about. The ascending branches may run unbroken to the medulla or they may end in the gray matter of the cord. At intervals along their course the branches of both orders have short lateral extensions by which they establish intercourse with other neurons. The arrangement has already been sketched in connection with the discussion of reflexes (see page 50).

If incoming impulses are to call forth the more elaborate reflexes, and especially, we believe, if they are to give rise to sensations, they must reach the cerebrum. The pathway thither is imperfectly known and not of the first importance in a work like the present. It has just been said that some afferent fibers actually reach the medulla; those which have come from the feet and have this anterior reach are the longest of all neurons. There is reason to think that much of the conduction to the brain is accomplished through shorter neurons in a tandem arrangement rather than over these long, uninterrupted channels. When the medulla is attained in either way, its own cells are supposed to take up the task of transmission. These are responsible for the forwarding of impulses to the important intermediate stations which flank the third ventricle and are known as the optic thalami. From these occurs the radiation to the cortex itself.

Sensations are apparently the psychic accompani-

ments of certain processes in the cerebral gray matter. We must assume that the streams of energy flashing from point to point in the cortex are very numerous, and we cannot say why some are attended with corresponding phenomena in our consciousness while others are not. The problem of attention is suggested at once, and this belongs to the psychologist. For the physiologist it is a persistent mystery how the physical mechanism can be so multifarious and the subjective experience so unified.

The afferent fibers which have thus far been discussed are those originating below the head. These exert directing influences upon the central mechanism which we are not likely to overestimate, but their contribution to the current of sensation is much less vivid and interesting than that furnished by way of the cranial nerves. If there is a partial exception to be conceded, it is in the case of the fingers, with their wonderful sensory equipment. Otherwise it needs no argument to prove the superior prominence of the eye and the ear in guiding intelligent conduct. To be without taste or smell would be a minor privation, but deafness and blindness are grave calamities, and when the two are conjoined we regard the victim with a pitying awe, which may be displaced by reverent admiration when we witness such triumphant emergences as those of Laura Bridgman and Helen Keller.

Something has been said previously of the afferent service of the cranial nerves. It will be recalled that in these nerves there is no clear assorting of sensory fibers to form a series of dorsal roots. In two or three cases there are ganglia in which are gathered the perikarya which maintain the passing fibers. The largest of these ganglia and the one most frequently referred to is the Gasserian ganglion on the trunk of the great fifth (trigeminal) nerve.

Vision.—The immense importance of the optic impulses in determining the content of the human mind and the conduct of human life is faithfully indicated in the large size of the optic nerves. Nearly half a million fibers are

bound up in one of these, most massive of all purely afferent trunks. It has been stated elsewhere that the immediate connections made by the optic fibers are with stations in the midbrain or thereabouts. From these subordinate centers reflexes are doubtless caused, while, at the same time, impulses mount to the cortex where the processes induced become the physical basis of conscious vision.

Hearing.—The number of fibers concerned in carrying the impulses on which the sense of hearing depends is small compared with that of the optic conductors. It has been estimated that perhaps 14,000 fibers on each side are provided to subserve this function. These fibers constitute the cochlear branch of the auditory nerve. The sound-waves which have come pulsing through the air to the external ear communicate their motion to a succession of structures in the winding cavities of the temporal bone, and ultimately to cells which can transmute this mechanical energy to the form of nerve-impulses. The resulting currents are led to gray matter within the medulla, forwarded thence to the midbrain, and finally, by a third relay, to the cerebral cortex.

The auditory nerve has a second part which is not supposed to have to do with hearing. This division, the vestibular nerve, brings to the brain impulses which have been started by displacements of fluids or of solid particles in the comparatively large portion of the internal ear which is looked upon as an organ of equilibration. There is reason to believe that when one sways—or, more radically, when one stumbles—such mechanical disturbances are brought about and impulses sent to the proper centers to dictate the compensating movements which are so promptly observed. The service of the ear in maintaining the balance is one which we seldom think of, and it is carried on for the most part with only slight involvement of sensation. But excessive stimulation of the internal ear probably has a share in developing the disagreeable feeling we call vertigo.

Taste and smell are two kinds of sensation which are often blended in our experience, but the nervous paths

concerned are widely separated, as they run from the receptors to the central apparatus. The olfactory fibers, as we have seen before, plunge into the under surface of the cerebrum itself. The fibers on which taste depends are probably scattered in the trunks of two or three nerves, and their arrangement is thought to be subject to a good deal of individual variation, but it is certain that their place of entrance into the substance of the brain is far back of that for the impulses from the organ of smell.

Sensations.—We are now in a position to make some general statements based on the outlines of the afferent system which have been given. It is evident that channels to the number of millions exist by which the central nervous system may be approached from without. The impulses moving along these pathways may have been started by changes in mechanical relations at the nerve-endings (pressure, tension, vibration). In certain cases they may be the result of temperature changes, either elevations or depressions. In other instances, including the action of the organs of taste, smell, and vision, the immediate source of the impulses must be described as a chemical change. However they may originate, the biologic function of all these inflowing currents is to determine adaptive reactions of the reflex type.

But as human beings we find the sensations which are associated with the arrival of certain of these impulses of the greatest interest. Either intensity or novelty of stimulation will be likely to insure an echo in consciousness. We are usually quite ignorant of the state of most of our internal organs; this does not mean that no impulses are ascending from them to the brain, but rather that these impulses have a monotonous character. Foster is responsible for the assertion that we should instantly miss the sensory contribution of the viscera if it should cease. To put the proposition somewhat crudely, we may say that we have no sensations from the alimentary canal, but we should, in all probability, realize a difference if it

were suddenly, though painlessly, removed. The background of consciousness would be altered; visceral sensation might be likened to the mountain range on the horizon, the constant presence of which would not distract attention from the domestic action in the foreground, though its disappearance would be something uncanny and appalling.

Sensations are commonly divided into two groups—the general and the special. General sensations are those which are referred to the varying conditions of the body itself; special, to causes external to ourselves. Normal visual sensation is clearly of the special class. This is true also of hearing, smell, and taste. (It should hardly be necessary to say that matter in the nasal or mouth cavity is not truly within the body, but only in contact with a portion of its surface.) Sensations from the skin, as pressure, warmth, cold, and cutaneous pain, are conveniently regarded as special, on the theory that something is acting from without to give rise to them. Yet it may be noted that we very readily change our subjective attitude toward some of these experiences. We may say that *we* are warm or that the *room* is warm, shifting the reference in the most facile way between the external world and the body itself.

General sensations are, for the most part, disagreeable, a fact which one is inclined to connect with their common relation to conditions which call for correction. If hunger and thirst were pleasant to experience they would not impel us to take measures for their banishment. Of course, this is true of pain in general, though the remedy may not be so obvious. So largely do the general sensations belong to maladjustments that it has been suggested that the measure of health is to be found in the extent to which they are crowded out by the special. A man who is extremely ill may have little margin for attending to what he sees and hears; bodily discomfort may almost completely monopolize his attention. A man who is exceptionally well has little occasion to dwell on sensations

of the general class. A simple diagram may serve to give vividness to this contrast (Fig. 15).

The transition from a condition in which special sensations fill the field of the attention to one in which they have become decidedly a minor matter may be quite precipitate.

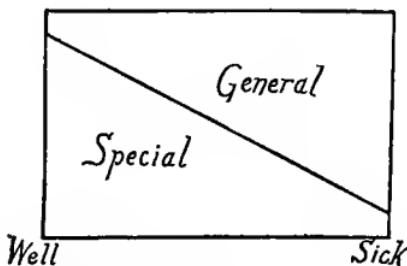


Fig. 15.—The encroachment of the general sensations upon the special in transition from health to sickness.

Consider, for example, the voyager upon the deck of a steamer. At one moment we see him engrossed by the beauty of the sea and sky, the freshness of the breeze against his face, and the tingle of the pure air in his nostrils. After a very brief interval he may be found utterly absorbed by one horrible general sensation.

CHAPTER VII

THE NEUROMUSCULAR MECHANISM

THE most conspicuous manifestations of the activity of the nervous system are the contractions of the skeletal muscles. Locomotion, balancing, movements of the arms and hands, changes of facial expression, speech—all these are examples. So also is breathing, a rhythmic process which we are apt to regard as similar in its nature to the beating of the heart, but which is fundamentally different, inasmuch as every breath is the sign of an outflow of nerve-impulses from the central gray matter, while the heart beats as a result of its own intimate properties.

Each skeletal muscle has a supply of efferent fibers. It has also afferent connections which are of much importance, though usually overlooked. A large muscle, like the biceps in the upper arm, can be recognized to consist of numerous parallel bundles set apart by connective tissue. These bundles, in their turn, can be resolved into more slender prismatic subdivisions, and the finest visible "grain" is perhaps the indication of the fibers which are the working units of the mechanism. A typical muscle-fiber is of hair-like proportions, being an inch or two in length and, on an average, about $\frac{1}{50}$ inch in diameter. Each of these fibers may be regarded as a muscle in miniature and has its own nervous connection.

It must not be inferred that the number of motor fibers in the nerves is equal to the number of muscle-fibers supplied. A single nerve-fiber, as it approaches its termination within the muscle, branches rather freely and is thus linked to a considerable number of muscle-fibers. It may govern as many as one hundred or the number may be much smaller. Muscles which are under the most

precise voluntary control have an exceptionally liberal apportionment of motor nerve-fibers. Such is the case with the little muscles which rotate the eyeball, executing movements over which we have the most complete command. Doubtless the small muscles which act upon the vocal cords have, as already noted, a relatively large number of nerve-fibers by which their eminently skilled action is determined.

Each motor fiber proceeds from a perikaryon which may be in the lower sections of the brain if the destination is a muscle of the head, but which will be in the spinal gray matter if the muscle is in the trunk or limbs (see page 33).

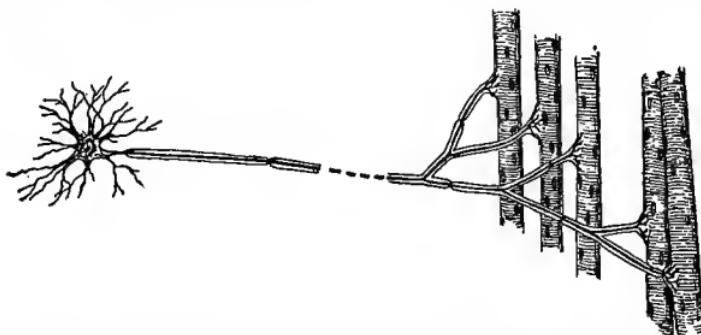


Fig. 16.—A “neuromuscular unit” as defined in the text. The motor perikaryon is united through its branched fiber and end-plates with five muscle-fibers. The typic number would be much larger.

Every perikaryon so situated is evidently in a position to bring into action a moderate number of muscle-fibers if it is itself stimulated. A *center* for a muscle, to be worthy of the name, should consist of many perikarya so enmeshed as to act simultaneously upon the contractile units of the muscle, leaving none of them unstimulated. A fact to be borne in mind is that the fibers of skeletal muscle cannot communicate the contractile process from one to another. They are insulated units and their coördination must be secured, if at all, by the manner in which the motor perikarya of the gray matter are assembled.

The muscle-fiber has been said to be the working unit of a muscle. A motor perikaryon, with its long axon extending to the muscle, branching at last and joining a cluster of muscle-fibers, may be looked upon as the *neuromuscular unit* (Fig. 16). In this combination there is a set of structures not yet described. The reference is to the intermediate elements between the nerve-fibers at their terminations and the protoplasm of the muscle. These mediating structures are called motor end-plates, and they have characters which differentiate them both from nerve and muscle. They must be transmitters of the excitatory process from the nerve-fibers to the muscle-fibers, and the interest felt in them springs from the fact that they conduct with very variable facility under changing conditions.

The simplest conceivable reflex finding expression through skeletal muscle would be realized in case a single afferent fiber were stimulated and its influence concentrated upon the dendrites of a single motor neuron. The resulting flutter of a few muscle-fibers buried among thousands of their fellows in a muscular mass could hardly be discerned. The most restricted reflex which we can observe doubtless involves a fairly large number of motor neurons with their dependent muscle-fibers. Moreover, it is supposed that adjustor or association neurons almost always intervene in the directing of the impulses.

In the present chapter it is intended to advance from the discussion of the simple reflex, already familiar in principle, to instances of motor performance which are commonly held to lie outside this class. One thinks immediately of the so-called "voluntary" movements. It has previously been stated that there is no clear demarcation between the two varieties. The more carefully one analyzes the conditions surrounding each, the less distinction there seems to be. A reflex movement is one occurring promptly and, as a rule, inevitably in response to a change of external conditions. A voluntary movement is also an adjustment depending upon

external conditions, though some of the factors determining it may lie far in the past. It is, of course, an act of which one is conscious and which one desires to see taking place. It is more profitable to attempt to unravel the physical mechanism than to enter the metaphysical discussion which is suggested.

Movements of the muscles which are closely associated with our consciousness and, as it seems to us, directed by it are brought to pass by neurons having their perikarya in the cortex of the cerebrum. The fibers belonging to

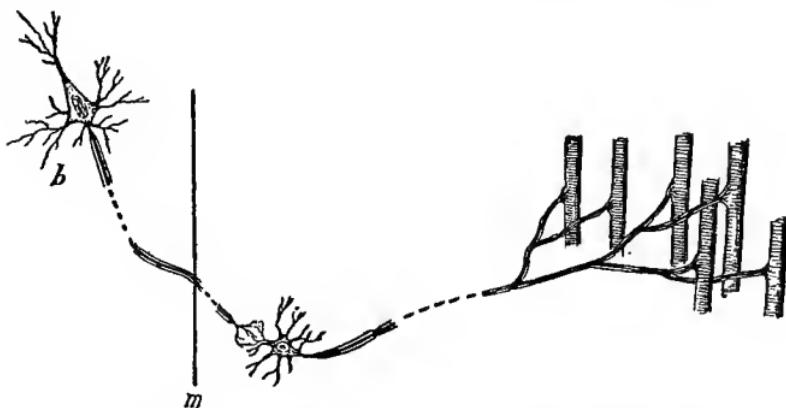


Fig. 17.—Here a “neuromuscular unit” like that in Fig. 16 is shown under the sway of a cortical motor cell (*b*). The “projection fiber” from this cell crosses the midplane of the body as suggested by the line *m*. In reality, a typical cortical cell probably influences a number of cells of the lower order.

such neurons never pursue an unbroken course to the muscles which they can call into action, but run down to form synapses with nerve-elements of the type already mentioned, which are either near the place of origin of those cranial nerves which contain motor fibers or else in the spinal gray matter. The fibers which transmit impulses from the cortex to the neurons directly presiding over the muscles belong to the class called projection fibers. An odd peculiarity of these is that, as they descend, they generally cross the midplane of the nervous system

and finally enter into relations with the motor apparatus on the opposite side of the body (Fig. 17).

The typic relation of skeletal muscles to the nervous system having been indicated, three subjects now suggest themselves for discussion in some detail. These are the gradation of responses, coördination, and neuromuscular fatigue.

Gradation of Responses.—It is a familiar but none the less a wonderful thing that we so successfully adapt our muscular efforts to the purposes which they are designed to serve. If one raises a book from the table one does not fling it upward with useless excess of energy, nor does one waste much time in preliminary contractions which do not suffice to move it. Unless one is deceived in his estimate of the weight to be handled, there is evidence of the most admirable economy in the execution of the movement. Judgment may sometimes be found at fault, as when a bottle of mercury resists so surprisingly the attempt to lift it or, in the opposite fashion, when an empty box is picked up by one who has been handling a series of boxes which were heavy.

How this grading of contractions to their uses is brought about is not entirely clear. In all probability, a vigorous voluntary effort means a cerebral process which is comparatively widespread and intense in degree. A small movement, or the sustaining of a trifling weight, may mean a less intense or a more localized process, or it may mean both. If intensity is what counts, we may assume that whether a contraction made by a given muscle is great or small, the number of projection fibers employed to bring it to pass is the same. On the other hand, it is interesting to consider the second possibility, that is, that a contraction will be large if the number of neuromuscular units coöperating to produce it is large, and reduced in proportion to the reduction of the number of these units engaged. Keith Lucas,¹ of Cambridge, England, who lately gave his life for the Empire, was the

¹ Journal of Physiology, 1905, xxxiii, 125; 1909, xxxviii, 113.

physiologist to whom we owe the second conception. Though it seems at first to be rather difficult to entertain, we shall find that a strong case can be made for it.

If every muscle-fiber is comparable with a repeating firearm in which new ammunition is rapidly placed in position to be discharged, it is hard to see how a stimulus strong enough to have any effect can do less than discharge all the energy which can possibly be released at the moment. If a blast is to be fired, it is immaterial whether a small or a large spark is used for the purpose. This is precisely the case with the heart. The form of muscular tissue composing the walls of this organ is said to obey the "all-or-none law," by which we mean that none but full-sized contractions can be obtained from it.

It is the conception of Lucas that the isolated fiber of skeletal muscle would be found to conform to the all-or-none principle if we could make experiments upon it. The real difference between such fibers and those of the heart, he supposes, lies in the insulated character of the former and the protoplasmic union of the latter. A process of contraction once started in the heart will usually sweep over all the bundles which make up its substance. In skeletal muscle such a process is definitely limited to the units actually reached by nerve-impulses, and a maximal response cannot be secured unless the stimulation can be made to affect every fiber through its end-plate. A stimulation of only a certain proportion of the units will result in a movement—or a tension—at the tendon less than the maximum. Because the number of units is large the number of possible gradations between the least and the greatest will be correspondingly large.

The idea set forth by Lucas can be expressed in other words. It makes what we call a muscle—assuming unity of action for all the fibers which can act upon a common tendon—a *musculature*, that is, a system capable of more or less localized action at some times and of a mutual reinforcement among all its parts when all its powers are called in play. When we venture to speak of a muscle

as though it were necessarily integral in its nature, we may be taking an unwarranted liberty.¹ The objection to this view, that a muscle containing some active and some idle elements should give evidence of the fact by its general appearance, is not a weighty one. A muscle which is maintained in a prolonged contraction probably presents an intricate picture of alternating activity among its fibers. If we could distinguish what is going on we might see hundreds of these shortening, while corresponding numbers might be relaxing. The net result of rhythmic action on the part of vast numbers of units, providing that they keep "out of step," may well be to give a gross impression of constant shortening. This is precisely the explanation offered by Lingle² for the continuous or "tonic" contraction observed in the alimentary canal.

If we adopt the description of the muscular mechanism given above, we can accept Lucas' theories entirely, and shall assume that a small movement is one to produce which only a small percentage of the available fibers are put into simultaneous contraction, while a large one is the external sign of the more general participation of the fibers. The experimenter sometimes sees indications of localized responses in skeletal muscle, and more attention to this matter is greatly to be desired. It is certain that if there is any failure of the nerve-cells to act when a muscle contraction is being sustained, there will be unemployed fibers in the muscle. We readily grant that the power developed by physical training is partly due to increased ability to make groups of muscles act together, and it does not seem unlikely that there is such a thing as an intra-muscular coördination which has to be secured.

Many interesting considerations follow the admission that muscles may act fractionally. It becomes quite possible that a part of the resources represented may not be within reach of our usual deliberate control. Such inaccessible units may be thrown into action in a reflex fashion

¹ Gertrude F. Barbour and the author in American Physical Education Review, February, 1912.

² American Journal of Physiology, 1910, xxxvi, 361.

or when the cerebral processes are of an exceptional character, as in strong emotion, hypnosis, delirium, and the like. These states are often occasions for the most astonishing display of strength. This is the more surprising because the subjects are not necessarily athletic or even of average muscular development. Surely in the case of a man wasted by fever we have no right to assume a superior condition of the muscles themselves. If such a man suddenly becomes violent and masters attendants whom he could not handle when in his normal condition, it is most natural to infer that his peculiarity consists in a more complete power to command his limited muscular resources than is realized at other times.

Other possible explanations may, nevertheless, suggest themselves. The capacity of muscles to respond to the stimulation proceeding from the central nervous system depends in part upon local chemical conditions and upon the amount of the blood-pressure. When we shall discuss the physiologic features of emotion we shall emphasize the value to the muscles of the internal secretion known as adrenin. This is poured out by the adrenal bodies in times of excitement and has a marked effect in the direction of reinforcing contraction and postponing fatigue. To adrenin we may ascribe a share in conferring upon the individual what we recognize as the "strength of desperation."¹ Such a chemical adjustment may occur in delirium or under hypnosis.

In the last-named condition it is a common demonstration to extend the body of the subject from one chair to another and to seat another person upon him midway between the points of support. The muscles which successfully meet this severe test may be untrained and insignificant in appearance. Is their unexpected rigidity due to chemical alterations in their make-up or to a stimulation of their fibers which is much more inclusive than can ordinarily be secured? May not both classes of factors be present at once?

¹ Cannon, "Bodily Changes in Pain, Hunger, Fear, and Rage," Appleton, New York, 1905.

We need not refer to unusual or pathologic examples to confirm the impression that the degree of command exerted by the nervous system varies very widely indeed. The most energetic responses are probably those produced when a number of afferent channels are simultaneously used to promote movements which could be reflexly evoked in connection with either one of these paths. Camis¹ has shown that in the lower animals it is possible to secure more powerful reflex contractions by stimulating two sensory nerves at once than can be caused to occur by the most intense excitation of either of these paths by itself. Some would interpret this result to mean that the same perikarya are more strongly stimulated when the approach is made through the larger number of afferent fibers; others would infer that a larger number of motor neurons are made accessible to the influence of the stimulation. Possibilities like these will receive additional discussion when we reach the subject of fatigue and its postponement.

Coöordination.—This word has already been said to be so comprehensive that it can be made to express the main function of the entire nervous system. It must now be viewed with especial reference to the execution of muscular movements. We seldom call into voluntary action a single muscle quite unaffected by any other. The use of solitary muscles in pure reflexes is equally rare. In the vast majority of cases, though we may be able to select one muscle as the chief performer, we have to recognize the auxiliary part played by its fellows in carrying out even what seems a simple movement. It is theoretically possible to bend the elbow by contracting a single muscle, the biceps humeri, but in executing the act in the habitual manner we find that the other muscles of the arm are not passive, but are changing their tension in such a way as to give steadiness, precision, and economy of force to the whole proceeding. Certain ones directly reinforce the essential movement, others assist indirectly by making

¹ Journal of Physiology, 1909, xxxix, 228.

more stable the parts of the skeleton which must be held as a fixed anchorage with relation to the parts in motion.

Particular attention must be directed to the inhibitory phenomena which are known to accompany most movements. Sherrington, of Liverpool, holds the foremost place among those whose researches have served to reveal the importance of this matter. When a muscle is selected at random and its mechanical relations are observed, we can usually find one or more other muscles which can be recognized as adapted to pull against it. We say that these muscles are the antagonists of the first. So in the case of the biceps humeri, already mentioned as applying its force to raise the forearm and to bend the elbow, we see that the triceps, on the back of the upper arm, must have the opposite effect. Technically speaking, the biceps is a flexor and the triceps an extensor.

In other parts of the body we find muscles which are less clearly arranged to act as antagonists, but the principle is, notwithstanding, a general one. Certain muscles raise, while others depress, the ribs. The analysis of such effects becomes more difficult when we consider examples like the bending and straightening of the back in which many muscles participate. The diaphragm offers a curious illustration; when its center is drawn downward by the contraction of its marginal portions the viscera are crowded aside and must be accommodated by the stretching of the muscular abdominal walls. Hence, the abdominal muscles are collectively antagonists of the diaphragm, but the transmission of pressure is through the contents of the cavity. Sometimes opposing muscles are of very unequal strength. It is plain that those which raise the lower jaw and set the teeth are incomparably more powerful than those which make the counter-movement, and there is little occasion for a strong mechanism in the second case.

Often we contract antagonistic muscles simultaneously and with balanced force. This is done when the object is to secure firmness in any part—to resist the tendency to

move rather than to cause a movement. When a limb which was previously held firm by such means is suddenly bent, it can be shown that two changes have occurred. Not only have the flexors shortened, but their opponents, the extensors, have been inhibited. They do not actually push, but they cease, in a perfectly definite way, to resist the movement which is to be brought about. Sherrington showed this in the most convincing manner by an experiment in which the rotation of the eyeball was under observation. He first determined conditions under which he could unfailingly secure the turning of the eye in a certain direction, we will say, toward the nose. The responsibility would seem to lie with the internal rectus muscle. By cutting the nerve of this muscle he paralyzed it. Then, repeating the stimulation which had caused the reaction before, he still saw the eyeball swinging in the old direction, though not so far as before.

What happened, that the eye should continue to turn as though drawn by a muscle now disconnected from the nervous system? The movement could be explained only upon the supposition that the antagonistic muscle did not fully relax until the action of its governing neurons was suspended at a moment when those normally presiding over its opponent were stimulated. A diagram will be helpful. In the leg of an animal the same type of inhibition has been demonstrated. If a reflex extension has been secured so frequently as to be predictable and a flexor muscle is then detached from the joint, but left in connection with its nerve, this muscle will be found to lengthen whenever the reflex is executed. It is the "law of reciprocal innervation" that when the centers excite a set of muscles the antagonists are inhibited. By inhibition in this case is meant the cessation of a mild continuous stimulation which is normally brought to bear upon all muscles excepting at such times (Fig. 18).

It will now be evident that a coördinated movement requires the excitation of some muscles, each in an appropriate degree, and the abolition of the habitual residue

of contraction (tonus) in other muscles, which must yield readily that they may not hinder the movement. In all but the simplest instances another element comes in, that of sequence or succession in the responses of individual muscles. Most movements occur in stages and many have an alternating character. When this is true we must suppose that each step establishes conditions of pressure or tension in the moving parts of such a nature as to excite certain receptors, and that the next shift in the musculature follows as a reflex. In the higher animals and in man only a little of this coördinating power resides

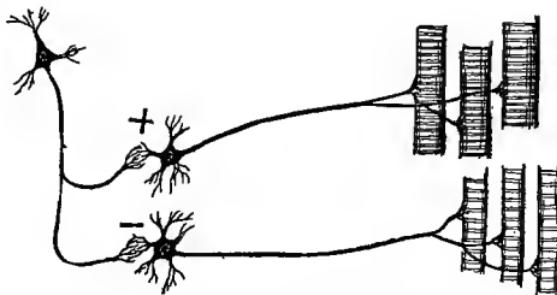


Fig. 18.—The principle of reciprocal innervation. The cortical neuron is represented as exciting the upper of the two subordinate neurons, causing the contraction of one group of muscle-fibers, while it inhibits the second neuron, allowing the associated muscle-fibers to relax. The + sign suggests stimulation; the — sign, inhibition. Doubtless the actual arrangement is less simple than this.

in the spinal cord. Most of it is represented in the brain. At this place it is convenient to speak briefly of the physiology of the cerebellum.

The Cerebellum.—It will be recalled that this division of the brain is a dorsal outgrowth of the nerve-axis. It is connected by a rich supply of fibers with the medulla behind, the ventral region known as the pons, and, less directly, with the cerebrum. Its prominence in different species of animals is most unequal. It is large in the fish, greatly reduced in the frog, very large again in the bird, and fairly large but overshadowed by the cerebrum in most mammals. A moment's reflection will show that the

size of the cerebellum can scarcely be correlated with the intelligence of these types; further consideration inclines one to the belief that it is in some sense linked with elaborate and active neuromuscular mechanisms.

A fish gives little indication of intelligence, but it has a most multifarious muscular system corresponding with its intricately developed skeleton. The bird has much more intelligence, but is distinguished most clearly by its powers of flight. A prominent cerebellum seems always to imply capacity for locomotion and balancing. This general contention is borne out by the results of experiments in which this part of the brain has been partially or wholly removed. When a physiologist wishes to determine the service of a particular structure in the nervous system he cuts it away, if this is possible, and keeps the animal alive to observe the resulting deficiency. This procedure is justified only when two conditions are fulfilled: first, no pathways between other stations than that under observation must be interrupted; second, the effects recorded must be those due to the actual lack of the part which has been sacrificed, and not to the irritation set up at the seat of the operation.

The pioneer experiments upon the cerebellum were made in France about one hundred years ago. The investigator found that a pigeon recently deprived of this part of the brain gave a distressing picture of incoördination. The bird could not fly nor even keep its feet. Its struggles were painful to witness, and the more so because there seemed to be no lessening of the normal sensitiveness and capacity for terror. In its staggering and fluttering about there was no apparent loss of the power to contract individual muscles, but the most obvious loss of the ability to secure the needful coöperation of the groups on whose action equilibrium in rest or motion depends. The doctrine based on such observations was to the effect that the cerebellum is in charge of the general musculature so far as this is used for equilibration and perhaps for other habitual types of performance.

The work of more recent students has shown that the control formerly credited to the cerebellum was too absolute and exclusive. Our belief is still that this part of the brain is much concerned with subconscious muscular adjustments requiring extensive coördination, but we no longer regard it as the sole seat of such regulation. It has been found that animals recover in great part from the profound effects of the removal of the cerebellum, and it is natural to conclude that the immediate results which are so striking are due largely to irritation at the place operated upon and not so definitely to the loss of its functioning. The recovery is never complete. A dog without a cerebellum may walk and swim again, but not with the full vigor and steadiness of the normal animal. Some element of reinforcement or compensation is permanently lacking.

As regards the human nervous system, it is usually held that the cerebellum is developed by practice and that it comes to contain much of the synaptic machinery for maintaining the balance at rest and in motion. It has often been supposed to assume command of complex movements which were at first guided at all stages by the cerebrum. Thus, it has been imagined that a child learning to walk, whose attention is plainly concentrated upon the taking of each step, is dictating its uncertain movements from the cerebral cortex, but that the higher mechanism is in time relieved of the detail and set free for new activities, the cerebellum taking its place, at least to a considerable extent.

If this is a correct conception, it may be inferred that later acquirements of the individual, such as swimming or skating, may likewise call for cerebral direction until they become easy and unconscious, when their government may be cerebellar. According to this view, the cerebellum is intimately related to all accomplishments which we can speak of as "second nature." But this is more certainly true of those which involve a large share of the muscles than of localized actions. The use of a

pen probably remains essentially a cerebral act, though one may trace a copy with a minimum of conscious attention. Disease of the cerebellum interferes chiefly with movements which call for the poising and timely control of the main mass of the body rather than with skill of hand.

Students are slow to realize the vast importance of afferent impulses in the execution of coördinated movements. When one sees a victim of spinal disease whose disorderly and badly regulated motions make him a painful spectacle, it is natural to infer that there is inability to command the muscles. Yet if it is a case of typic locomotor ataxia the chief trouble is with the ascending paths. The afflicted man suffers from the want of a guiding sense. He cannot readily perceive the extent of the movements which he is executing, nor the resistances encountered. He is likely to do much better when he has the use of his eyes than he can in the dark. All people are assisted by the eyes in the maintenance of equilibrium, but these receptors become still more important when there is a failure of the impulses from the motor apparatus itself.

Among the receptors intimately connected with the cerebellum are those situated in the internal ear (page 81). By this term we understand a cavity in the temporal bone having a form intricate enough to justify the name of *labyrinth* often applied to it. There is a principal space, the *vestibule*, from which a spiral passage like that in a snail-shell extends in one direction, while three other passages, the *semicircular canals*, diverge in other planes and return, after the manner of loops, to the main compartment. The spiral passage has to do with hearing; our present concern is with the structures in the vestibule and semicircular canals.

The labyrinth is filled with fluid. Suspended in the vestibule are two membranous sacs communicating by a V-shaped duct. One of these, the *saccule*, is connected with the spiral organ of hearing; the other, the *utricle*, gives rise to three canals of membrane which traverse the

bony loops already mentioned. In the saccule and utricle and at the ends of the membranous canals are numerous nerve-endings. They pertain to the vestibular nerve. In the sacs are certain particles, free to move about and probably of a high specific gravity. These are the oto-liths. They must rest upon certain spots when the body is upright and shift their contacts to other places when there is any change of position. It is supposed that any such shifting changes in a corresponding way the tide of afferent

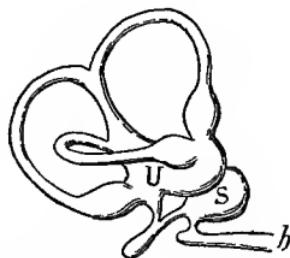


Fig. 19.—The sketch suggests the membranous system of the right labyrinth so far as it has to do with equilibrium. It is viewed from without. U is the utricle giving rise to the three semicircular canals. It is seen to be connected with the saccule S which, in turn, communicates with the organ of hearing (cut off at h).

impulses flowing from these receptive surfaces to the brain. Reflex adjustments tend to occur as a result.

As to the canals, while they contain no solid particles they are provided with sensory endings tributary to the same nerve which serves the saccule and utricle. The endings in question seem well adapted to respond to surges of the lymph in the canals. These passages are in three perpendicular planes of space. One, on either side of the head, is horizontal. Two rise vertically above the horizontal canal and are at right angles one to the other. It is believed that each canal gives rise to characteristic stimulation when the head is moved in its own plane. Thus the lymph in the horizontal canals must be disturbed by whirling; the vertical canals are more affected by swaying of the body.

Breathing.—An important subdivision of the general neuromuscular system is that which stands in control of breathing. The muscles used are such as we can employ singly or in groups for various purposes. We can also modify our breathing if we choose, but only within limits. It is supposed to be impossible to commit suicide by holding the breath. It is increasingly difficult to continue forcing the breathing beyond one's inclination. Since we cannot long underbreathe, nor yet overbreathe, it is natural to assume that there is some positively acting, involuntary mechanism normally dictating the rate and depth of the breathing movements. We have evidence of very long standing that this mechanism indeed exists and that its chief center is in the medulla.

Breathing is not dependent upon the cerebral cortex. Complete division of the nervous axis at the level of the pons does not stop the respiration. If the injury is extended backward into the medulla, breathing is suspended permanently when certain cell-clusters are destroyed or when they are cut off from communication with the spinal cord. The French workers who first demonstrated the absolute dependence of life upon the integrity of this very limited region called it the "vital knot." It is generally referred to as the respiratory center. It is so related to the remainder of the nervous system that it is involved in almost every reflex act of any magnitude. Its ordinary action seems to be determined by the condition of the blood which is sent to it. If the dissolved carbon dioxid is increased, the center is excited to cause deeper and quicker breathing. If the same gas is reduced to an unusually low concentration in the blood, the stimulation of the center is suspended and there is a pause in the breathing (apnea).

CHAPTER VIII

THE NEUROMUSCULAR SYSTEM: NEUROMUSCULAR FATIGUE

NOTHING is more familiar than the fact of experience that muscles used long and severely respond less and less readily to our requisitions upon them. This progressive flagging of efficiency, together with the subjective sense of difficulty in commanding the muscles employed, we speak of as fatigue. When we add the adjective "neuromuscular" we open the way to a discussion of the respective share of muscular and nervous elements in the development of this condition. In the laboratory we can devise experiments such that fatigue of muscle is studied quite by itself; in the living body muscles are used only when their controlling nervous mechanisms are in action.

Fatigue, whether in muscular fibers or in neurons, may conceivably result from either of two causes. It will be inevitable if the store of energy-producing substance runs low. This is a type of fatigue which approaches exhaustion as a limit. The second possibility is that by-products or end-products of the chemical process which is going on may so accumulate as to become a hindrance to the continuance of that process. This is probably the ordinary happening: muscles which refuse to work are not destitute of all fuel, but are, figuratively speaking, clogged by ashes and half-burned clinkers that remain as relics of the combustion which has recently taken place.

So far as muscular tissue is concerned, we know something of the products which are capable of depressing its activity. Three compounds are usually mentioned as bearing a part—carbon dioxid, lactic acid, and acid

potassium phosphate. These are all acidic in nature, and it is supposed that any other acid, introduced experimentally, will have a similar effect. Undefined fatigue substances probably exist in addition to the ones named, and they may not all have an acid character. A most important fact to be noted with regard to these metabolic products is this: the same compounds which in high concentration can poison the muscle to the point of apparent paralysis, act as stimulants when they are present in small amounts. In this we find one explanation of the favorable effect of moderate preliminary exercise upon muscular capacity. A muscle is not so efficient when it is first aroused to activity after a period of rest as it is when it has been used for a time.¹

The phenomenon referred to—the gain in power which comes with a brief series of contractions—is spoken of as the “stair-case effect,” or often, using a German equivalent, as the Treppe. The proof that it is due in part at least to the so-called fatigue substances we owe to Lee of Columbia. Other factors undoubtedly enter in; when one is “warming up” one profits by the adaptation of the circulatory system to the new requirements and, perhaps, also by changes in the activity of the organs of internal secretion. But when all allowance has been made for such sources of reinforcement, we must still attribute much to the favorable influence of the products of activity exerted before their accumulation has become excessive.

We are now in position to consider the probable seat of fatigue in the neuromuscular apparatus. Recalling the unit of this mechanism as previously defined, we find that the possibilities are more numerous than would at first be supposed. The muscle-fiber may be fatigued. The junction of nerve and muscle, the motor end-plate, is another structure which is subject to impairment by its own use. This is, indeed, a relatively weak link in the chain. Fatigue of the nerve-fiber may be disregarded; the enduring nature of the white matter has already been

¹ F. S. Lee, Pop. Sci. Monthly, February, 1910.

commented upon (see page 39). But fatigue of the motor perikaryon is to be reckoned with, and so is fatigue at the synapses through which its discharges are determined. It is not wise to make dogmatic assertions as to the precise order in which failure of these unlike structures is to be anticipated when they are kept steadily at work.

If a proper balance between destructive and recuperative processes can be struck, a neuromuscular mechanism need not exhibit fatigue in spite of what seems like continuous use. This is the case with the diaphragm, which bears its part in the taking of every breath, but seems not to show any weakening of response or loss of irritability until it shares the general decline of old age. As the diaphragm is not automatic, but contracts only in response to stimulation traceable to the brain, we must suppose that in the nervous as well as in the muscular portions of this combination restoration normally keeps pace with decomposition, and that the waste-products are not suffered to gather at the seat of action. (The diaphragm is chosen rather than the heart to exemplify this balance because the beating of the heart is not dictated from without.)

If we leave out of further account the muscles used in breathing and their presiding neurons, we shall be ready to agree that in general our neuromuscular equipment is subject to daily if not more frequent fatigue, and calls for rest that it may be renewed. The renewal must include the washing away or perfect neutralization of the fatigue substances and the introduction of fresh fuel supplies. To make our discussion concrete, let us fix our attention upon an imaginary pedestrian who is found toward the end of the day covering the last mile of a long tramp. In what respects is his system altered from its state at setting out in the morning?

His leg muscles have done the heaviest work. They have produced in the course of the walk a great quantity of carbon dioxid. This has, presumably, been removed quite

promptly and fully through the lungs. But the other acid products may now be present to an extent which suffices to render the muscles less responsive to central command. The same or similar compounds may have affected the motor end-plates in such a way as to make difficult the transmission of effects from nerve to muscle. If a blockade is established at this point, muscular response may fail at a time when there is yet plenty of potential working capacity in the muscles themselves. It is generally held that this is just what occurs: the end-plates become impervious to stimuli, while other parts of the apparatus are still in fair working order.

One is tempted to draw a comparison between the end-plate and a safety-fuse, such as is used in connection with an electric fixture. The fuse is intended to be destroyed under conditions which might otherwise threaten damage to more valuable portions of the system. It is readily renewed. So we may think of the end-plate as something easily impaired by use, but also easy to repair. It is better that wear and tear should fall upon this structure rather than upon the more highly organized protoplasm of nerve-cells or muscle-fibers. We may now assign as one condition associated with our walker's painful progress the increasing difficulty of end-plate transmission.

Another condition is operative at the same time. This is the persistent return from the musculature itself, the joints, and the soles of the feet of afferent impulses inhibitory to continued walking. In part these impulses give rise to sensations of lameness and weariness. In part they may impede action without having their sign manifest in consciousness. Fatigue, so far as it is due to impulses of this class, may be regarded as disinclination rather than incapacity. If we are ingenuous we must admit that much of our fatigue has to be classified under this head. Such a source of deterrent impulses as a blistered foot has a double effect upon the sufferer. Besides making him feel disposed to stop, it causes him to adopt an unnatural gait in the endeavor to "favor" the injured

member, and this means that comparatively untrained muscles are called upon. Endurance is thus inevitably lessened.

We have now recognized two probable elements in the familiar state of the tired man. These are end-plate fatigue and inhibitory impulses mounting to the centers. Additional factors are undoubtedly concerned. Among these we may include some measure of true muscular fatigue, dependent on the local chemical changes in the contractile material and perhaps on changes in the composition of the blood and lymph. We must bear in mind that fatigue substances of this class may be distributed far and wide by the circulation and depress the functional activity of muscles which have not themselves been much used. An unfavorable effect spreading to glands and to the nerve-centers is easily possible. Our pedestrian may be feeling the results of such a diffuse poisoning as he plods along.

Deterioration of the motor perikarya in the cord and perhaps in the brain may be one source of the observed waning of power. Reference has been made some time since to the demonstration of visible changes in these bodies which Hodge and others have succeeded in making conclusive. A new picture of the central element in general fatigue we owe to the school of Sherrington, and particularly to one recently associated with him, Alexander Forbes.¹ This new emphasis is placed upon the synapses through which stimulation of the motor perikarya must be accomplished. Each typic perikaryon has a number of these possible approaches. When it takes part in a simple reflex it is not excited through the same synapse as though the stimulation were conveyed to it from the brain.

Now, there is reason to believe that synapses, like end-plates, are links of limited endurance in the neuromuscular chain. If, however, a synapse becomes fatigued and incapable of efficient conduction, there is the possibility, not present in the case of the end-plate, of substituting a

¹ American Journal of Physiology, 1912, xxxi, 102.

new route for the application of stimuli. We have very satisfactory evidence that some of these synapses do fatigue, and that an apparent renewal of motor command is secured when new ways of stimulation, involving different sensory paths, are devised. Let us suppose that our weary traveler suddenly hears martial music. If it is his nature to be moved by the strains we may expect that, for a time, his pace will be quickened and all external signs of fatigue diminished.

How shall we interpret the marked effect of the music? There may be more than one opinion as to this, but we

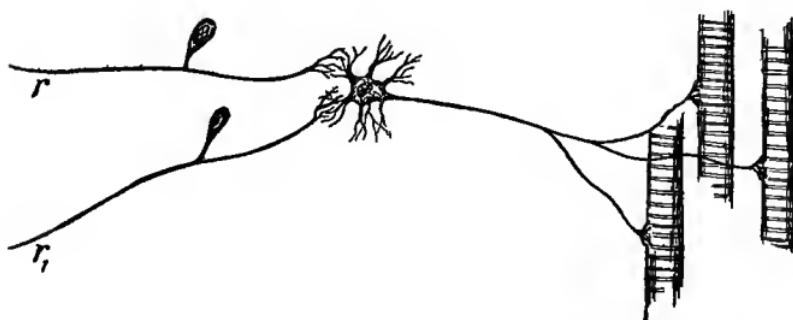


Fig. 20.—The principle of fatigue in reflex action—Forbes' conception. When the reflex obtained through r fails, the action can be renewed by shifting stimulation to r_i . The motor parts are the same in both cases, hence the fatigue is in a route of approach to the center. One must, in imagination, multiply all the elements illustrated.

may indicate a possible explanation along the lines of Forbes' experiments. First, we must briefly describe his methods. He has studied the fatigue of the reflex mechanism in cats. A nerve containing afferent fibers is chosen and its central end is stimulated. Certain muscles respond, and one of these is selected for careful observation. When the stimulation is applied repeatedly the contractions of the muscle are progressively reduced until at length none can be secured. Fatigue at some point in the apparatus is to be inferred, but where? The answer is forthcoming when a shift of the electrodes is made to

another afferent nerve. Such a shift is followed by renewed activity on the part of the muscle to which attention is directed (Fig. 20).

In this case the motor elements used in the earlier and in the later part of the trial are presumably the same. It is the afferent neurons which are different. Fatigue of nerve-fibers is negligible, and the conclusion must be that failure to conduct has occurred at the place where the impulses of peripheral origin must exert their effect upon the motor neurons. This is the same as saying that we have here an instance of synaptic fatigue. Much potential capacity for action may still reside in the efferent equipment, but a new line of approach must be adopted to demonstrate it. Forbes has used animals in which only the cord and not the brain has been intact, thus simplifying his conditions as far as he could. It seems legitimate to extend the same principle to muscular performances in which the brain is concerned. This we shall now undertake to do.

The neurons, which have their perikarya in the cortex of the cerebrum and send their dependent projection fibers down the spinal axis, are not self-stimulated. They are thrown into action, like the neurons of lower rank, by impulses affecting them through synapses. Now we may fairly suppose that the efficiency of these cerebral motor neurons is greatest when they are stimulated from all sides, so to speak, rather than in a one-sided fashion. Here we have a key to the invigorating influence of rhythmic music upon the walker and perhaps to many other phenomena of the same class.

The tired man to whom we have so often referred has been kept in motion through the day by a variety of external stimuli. Some of these have had a very direct effect upon the lower centers, as in the case of the impulses returning from the soles of the feet at every contact with the ground. These, together with others from the joints, the tightening tendons, and probably from the muscles themselves, have been ever prompting the

taking of an additional step to be added to the lengthening series. Visual impulses, varied with the changing scenery, have been giving rise to cerebral currents which have favored the holding of the muscles to their long task. But now a time has come when the impulses returning from the locomotor organs are deterrent rather than encouraging. Inhibition at the lower centers is overridden with increasing difficulty by the action of the higher complexes.

In the brain itself the visual currents may cease to be favorable. There is no longer the desire to see beyond the

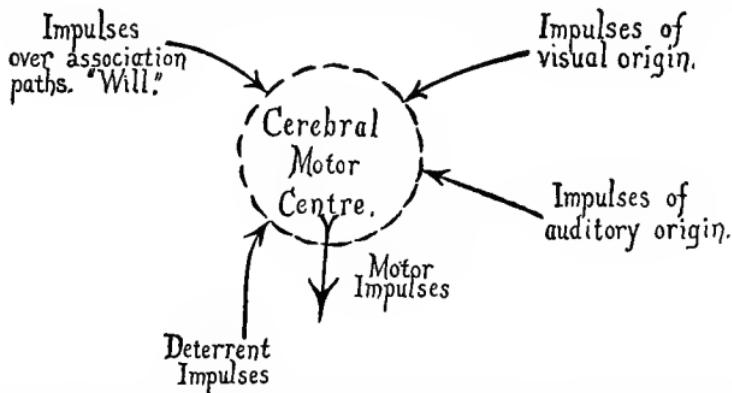


Fig. 21.—To suggest, though incompletely, the concentration of certain streams of impulses upon the motor cortex in one tired by prolonged exertion. To bring in play a fresh path of approach is to secure some renewal of activity. To abate the deterrent impulses has a like effect.

next turn of the road or to gain the next ridge. What is needed to rouse the flagging cortical centers is stimulation over afferent paths that have not yet been brought into use. One of these is the auditory nerve. The ear has had but little to do with reinforcing the walker's efforts up to this time. Hence the music wakes to ready response a part of the nervous system which has been but little fatigued by any action strictly its own, although the overflow of fatigue substances formed elsewhere may have injured it to some extent. The cortical motor neurons are reached over paths nearly inactive until now

and by means of synapses which have not been fatigued. The new application would be vain if there were not still muscular resources available and possibilities of synaptic transmission from the projection fibers of the cerebrum to the motor neurons of the cord (Fig. 21).

What shall we say of the soldier who is roused from what seemed to be utter fatigue by the close pursuit of the enemy and the whistle of bullets? Is this a simple case of setting up brain currents which arrive at the motor centers by fresh routes and unimpaired synapses? It may be so in part, but whenever a strong emotional reaction is entailed there are likely to be chemical reinforcements of muscular capability. This is a matter which may well be left for discussion in another connection. The general principle has been stated in the last chapter (see page 92), where the augmented production of adrenalin in times of excitement was mentioned.

The remarkable postponement of fatigue in the case of those who like to dance is worthy of some comment. Consider the country girl, whose daily tasks are heavy enough to leave her quite tired at nightfall and ready for an early bedtime. On the exceptional evening when there is to be a party the usual day's work may have been faithfully done, but there may be no signs of the accustomed weariness. Instead, she goes to the dance and for hours pursues a form of vigorous exercise in which the muscles used are, in the main, the same which were called upon in the domestic round. Perhaps the emotional state is intense enough to warrant the belief that internal secretions are modified to support the muscular activity. Whether this is so or not, we can see that the conditions favor an extensive and symmetric stimulation of the cortical areas.

When the girl in question was engaged in sweeping a room she was held to her dull duty by certain internal stimuli of an obscure but evidently monotonous character. The "sense of duty" as realized in consciousness is attended by the transmission of impulses to the motor

apparatus, but the number of these impulses is far less than it might be if various external conditions favoring reinforcement could be added. At the dance the reinforcing factors are present in the most efficient combination. There is the music, there are the lights and the shifting play of colors as the figures move, there are contacts, and all the while a richness in the psychic experience totally foreign to the drudgery at home. This psychic richness doubtless corresponds with the physiologic fact of multiplied brain-currents.

The difference between play and work, between doing what we keenly enjoy and what we feel we ought to do for some remote result, may be said to be the difference between a motor performance in which many pathways are traversed by the impulses which unite to stimulate the neuromuscular mechanism and one in which the number of these paths is small and not much subject to variation. Titchener once surprised an audience by the declaration that "all work is a waste of time"; this he elucidated as meaning that the zest which we associate with play is the basis of better accomplishments than can be attained when only the feeling of obligation is operative. The boy who becomes very tired of chopping wood can use the same muscles in a game, and his parents may twit him with the fact. But while it is true that he is using the same muscles and the same spinal neurons, perhaps the same projection fibers from the cerebrum, he is not using the same afferent channels nor the same cortical approaches to the motor centers. The adult cannot honestly lay claim to immunity from fatigue of this sort.

Elements in Training.—A great deal that has been said in this and the preceding chapter may conveniently be reviewed under this head. In what respects does an untrained neuromuscular system differ from one which has been developed by use? We shall find as many possibilities in this connection as we have in our attempt to analyze fatigue. We shall have to pay attention to the muscles, the end-plates, and the central organization.

One fact is impressed upon the mind of the man in the street: that muscles grow with use. We shall not be inclined to make this the foremost consideration, but it is well worth emphasizing. This is not the place to enter upon any discussion of the causes underlying this well-known growth. It may be due in part to improved circulation and in part to chemical conditions arising when contractions take place. It may be said to be a principle of rather wide application in biology that a destructive process, during vigorous life, will be followed not only by a process of repair, but by overcompensation. This is held to be true of antitoxin production and acquired immunity to disease. It is simply illustrated in callous formation: when friction destroys the surface layers of the skin they are not merely replaced, but their number is increased. The increase in the mass of a muscle consequent on its regular use is also a reaction from a decomposition process, for every contraction is executed at the cost of some substance disintegrated. But the growth of the muscle is not wholly analogous to the formation of a callus, because in the first case it is believed that we have no multiplication of fibers, but only an increase in volume on the part of those present.

One may make proper allowance for the greater size of trained, as compared with untrained, muscles, and he will be convinced that the gain in power is out of all proportion to the gain in bulk. Betterment of quality must certainly be admitted. The service of exercise to a man may be rather to give him full command of the tissue which he has than to put more at his disposal. Superior quality in muscle may mean an actual chemical change by which the fuel is made more available or stored in larger quantity, or the chief improvement may be in the efficiency of the circulation. Much will depend upon this, for the supply of oxygen to the muscle protoplasm is an imperative requirement.

In the third place, it is conceivable that facility of end-plate transmission is one of the gains. Difficulty in

securing responses because of conditions existing at the junction of nerve and muscle may be one of the characteristics of the untrained, as it is of the fatigued, state. The increased endurance demonstrated by those who have put themselves upon sparing diets (Fletcher, Chittenden, et al.) is most easily explained on the theory that the end-plates were previously subject to a chronic impairment owing to the presence of avoidable metabolic products. Such a situation would be equivalent to continuous fatigue and would limit at all times the working capacity of the muscles. Exercise may be assumed to bring about a more favorable condition at this important locality in the neuromuscular complex.

Still another result of training may be more extensive and effective innervation. We shall make much of this if we accept the Lucas doctrine of the fractional response of muscles. According to this view, the muscle which has not been much used contains elements which are not accessible to stimulation under any ordinary state of affairs. With regular use the number of these idle fibers may very likely be steadily reduced and a corresponding increase of force and endurance realized. The defect overcome may be at the end-plates or it may be in the central nervous system. If it was originally at the end-plates, we may picture the perikarya which preside over the untrained muscle as being all active, but unable to call portions of it into contraction. If it was central, we are to conceive of idle perikarya among those which are at work, each unemployed neuron having a cluster of dependent muscle-fibers which remain at rest.

So far we have spoken of peripheral improvements, save that in the last instance we have introduced the idea of a possible central factor. We have recognized the advantages accruing (1) from the actual growth of the muscles, (2) from improved contractile substance, (3) from more reliable end-plates, and (4) from better "team work" among the neurons governing single muscles. Now, by a simple extension of the last-named factor, we

may include the gain through coördination. This is what we mean by acquiring skill. In all but the most elementary movements the best combinations of contractions on the part of different muscles have to be secured by practice. The physiologic change which makes the gain possible must consist in the establishment of new ties between the various groups of neurons at all levels in the central nervous system.

Better coördination means better economy of force. When one is riding a bicycle in the early days of the experience much strength is wasted. The foot which is coming up resists the foot which is going down. This is a type of an interference which is widespread where many muscles are set to work in an unwonted form of exercise. When the "knack" is attained, much less internal work is done for a given external result. This has been proved by measurements of the respiratory exchange in persons who were performing certain tasks (climbing hills, for instance), with and without adequate training. It is altogether probable that in reaching the full measure of economy, precision, and endurance the coöperation of the cerebellum is secured.

CHAPTER IX

THE AUTONOMIC NERVOUS SYSTEM

THE term which is used as the title of this chapter is employed to cover that part of the efferent system which does not control the skeletal muscles. The negative description seems awkward, but is nevertheless accurate and final. It is equivalent to the statement that the autonomic system regulates the action of the heart, the glands, and all structures in which there is contractile tissue of the kind known as plain, smooth, or visceral muscle. This variety of tissue occurs in the alimentary canal, the gall-bladder, the urinary bladder and the ureters, in the reproductive organs, in the blood-vessels and lymphatics, and in the bronchial tubes. It is also represented, though sparsely, in the skin. It forms the accommodation or focusing muscle of the eye and its presence in the iris makes possible the familiar changes in the size of the pupil.

The term "autonomic" is akin to the political word "autonomy," and implies "self-regulating." A contrast between this division of the nervous system and that which governs the skeletal muscles is suggested. It is a common practice to call the skeletal muscles "voluntary," and to regard the heart and all the organs equipped with plain muscle as "involuntary." The distinction is as apt to mislead as to be helpful and it will not be insisted upon here. Of course, it is true that we often have a fore-knowledge of the movements of our skeletal muscles which we do not have in any such degree with respect to the other motor elements in the body nor as regards the behavior of the glands. But we must note that much of the activity of the so-called voluntary muscles proceeds with little conscious attention on our part (breathing, balancing),

while we shall find that there are many correspondences between the states of consciousness and the reactions brought about through the autonomic system.

It will not be profitable to say much about the anatomy of this division of the nervous system. The details are exceptionally difficult. One point, however, must not be omitted: so far as we know, each path from the cord or the brain to any outlying locality reached by autonomic influences is a tandem arrangement of two orders of neurons (see page 33). The neurons of the first order—

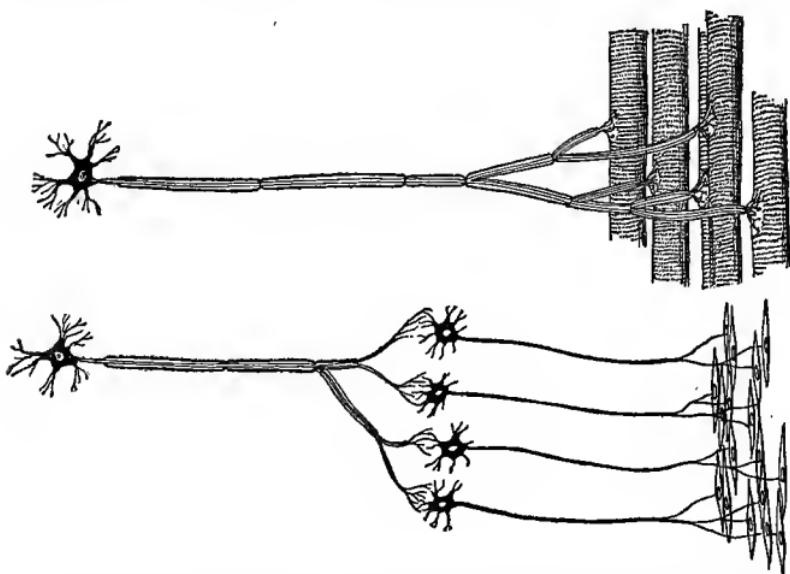


Fig. 22.—Above is shown the typic motor neuron extending from the central nervous system to the fibers of skeletal muscle. Below is the autonomic type of path. The neuron which leaves the central nervous system does not span the whole interval, but ends in synaptic union with ganglion cells. These in turn send axons to the tissue controlled—in this case smooth muscle.

preganglionic, as they are called—have their perikarya within the brain or the cord and extend outside to a greater or less distance. They end by forming synaptic connections with neurons of the second order—post-ganglionic—and these complete the transmission to the

secreting or contractile tissues to be affected. The synapses between neurons of the first and those of the second order are usually to be found in *ganglia*, detached collections of gray matter variously situated. Two chains of these ganglia are seen in the back of the body cavity, one on either side of the spinal column. Preganglionic fibers reach them from the neighboring spinal nerves, and their postganglionic fibers either rejoin the spinal nerves to be distributed with their peripheral branches or pass directly to endings in the viscera. These two chains with their connections are known under the curious old name of the "sympathetic system." The word used never had its psychologic meaning.

"Autonomic" is a more inclusive term than "sympathetic."¹ The sympathetic system is that part of the autonomic receiving preganglionic fibers from the thoracic and lumbar portions of the spinal cord. There are autonomic pathways beginning in the brain which are not reckoned in the sympathetic system, and there are others at the lower end of the spinal axis which lie outside its anatomic limits. We shall not often have occasion to refer to the sympathetic system apart from the larger complex of which it is a fraction. Ganglia belonging to the autonomic system, but lying outside the two sympathetic chains, are found in very many localities; for example, behind the eye, in the walls of the heart, and clustered about the arteries which supply the digestive organs. They are not to be confused with the ganglia connected with afferent paths, which are found, for the most part, close to the point of entrance of such paths into the central nervous system.

We may now pass to a condensed statement of the operations of the autonomic system upon various departments of the physiologic mechanism. We may well speak first of its control of the circulation. This is exercised

¹ Different usages have been adopted by different writers. At present the employment of the term "autonomic" never leads to confusion. "Sympathetic" is more subject to misunderstanding.

partly through the cardiac and partly through the vaso-motor nerves. The heart is a muscular pump, and on the force and frequency of its beat depends the volume of blood sent through the arteries to all regions of the body. Its beating is fundamentally automatic, but subject to extensive regulation through the nerve-centers. Autonomic paths to the heart-muscle can be traced from two sources. Of these, the most conspicuous and the earliest to be studied is represented by certain fibers in the large nerve known as the vagus, the tenth in the cranial series (see page 73).

When the vagus nerves of a dog are both cut, it is commonly observed that the rate of the heart is considerably increased. This is taken to mean that a restraining or inhibitory influence was previously exerted through these nerves upon the heart's activity. This impression is confirmed when the peripheral end of one of the cut vagi is subjected to electric stimulation. The heart may be made to stand still for some seconds and the circulation is stopped. This would kill the dog in a short time if it could be continued, but it cannot; the heart is said to "escape," that is, to resume its beating in spite of continued stimulation of the vagus. Still, the rate and force of the beat can be kept below the original standard for an indefinite time. The natural conclusion with reference to the share borne by the vagi in the government of the heart is that they contain fibers through which its activity is generally held in check and a reserve for emergencies guaranteed. The organ may be assumed to expend its power unprofitably when these fibers have been cut.

The heart receives some nerve-fibers in addition to those which reach it by way of the vagi. These others come from the sympathetic ganglia near its own level in the thorax. They are not easily picked up for stimulation in the living animal, but when the experiment is successful they are found to have an effect just opposite to that which has been described. They furnish paths through which impulses can be sent to quicken and make more

forcible the beating of the heart. The branches coming to the heart from the sympathetic ganglia are called the cardiac accelerators. Simultaneous stimulation of the vagus and an accelerator path brings out the fact that the two sets of fibers are true antagonists; the influence of the one can be neutralized through the other.

This is a type of nervous organization which we find again and again in the body. Antagonistic nerves are almost as obvious as antagonistic muscles. Being provided with such a double supply, the heart may be made to beat faster through the spurring which it receives from its accelerators, or a similar quickening of its rate may represent merely a lessening of the habitual vagus inhibition. A slowing heart may be exhibiting the results of cessation of the accelerator prodding, or the case may be one of intensified inhibition. On the whole, it is held that the vagus mechanism is the more important of the two.

Vasomotor Control.—A prominent department of the autonomic system is that devoted to the regulation of local blood-flow by bringing about changes in the diameter of the small arteries and veins. The blood-vessels of microscopic size are relatively rich in muscular elements. The majority of these contractile cells are placed with their long axes at right angles to the course of the blood, and the natural result of their contraction is to diminish the bore of the vessels and to reduce the flow through them. As the situation is now pictured, it is supposed that the larger arteries and veins shrink and swell as the pressure of the blood within falls or rises, but that the very slender vessels of both classes contract and relax by virtue of the living tissue contained in their walls and in response to impulses sent from the central nervous system. Nerve-fibers conveying impulses to the muscular coats of the small blood-vessels are called vasomotor fibers. Like those which end in the heart, they are of two classes.

The first kind of vasomotor fibers to be observed at work were those which we now call the vasoconstrictors.

By this term we designate fibers by means of which a narrowing of the vessels can be secured. They have connections such that when they are stimulated the contractile elements in the walls of the arteries or veins to which they extend are shortened. The "tone" of the vessels in question is said to be increased. A diminished blood-flow through the parts reached by the arteries or drained by the veins is to be expected. Vasoconstriction is the usual effect when the peripheral portion of a nerve chosen at random is subjected to stimulation. When such a nerve is cut the vessels in the field of its distribution are generally found to dilate; this is taken to show that a tonic influence was being exerted through the vasoconstrictor fibers and that this has ceased with the interruption of their continuity.

We speak of a vasoconstrictor center in the medulla. There is evidence that impulses are normally flowing at all times from a certain region within this section of the brain to hold the small blood-vessels in most parts of the body in a state of contraction beyond that which is natural to them. Three orders of neurons must be required to accomplish the purpose: first, those which descend from the medulla to end by synapses against preganglionic neurons in the cord; second, these same preganglionic neurons, whose axons run to detached ganglia in the sympathetic chains or elsewhere; and third, postganglionic fibers extending from the ganglia to the blood-vessels. Destruction of the well-defined vasoconstrictor center in the medulla results in a universal slackening of the essential vascular tone in the entire body.

The second variety of vasomotor fibers is not so often seen in action. They are the vasodilators, fibers which, when stimulated, cause the enlargement of the vessels and so of the blood-stream in the parts to which they lead. This action is an inhibition. It was first demonstrated in the case of a small nerve known as the chorda tympani, which makes a connection with one of the salivary glands. Cutting the chorda tympani has little effect on the circu-

lation in the gland, but when the nerve is stimulated the gland becomes flushed and swollen. At the same time the outflow through the veins is obviously increased; it is said that the blood coming away no longer shows the darkened color usual to venous blood, but is as bright as the arterial. The experiment has shown that in this nerve at least there are fibers through which an increase of the volume of the local circulation can be brought about.

There are other, though not many, examples of vasodilator action on the part of particular nerves. There is sufficient reason for the belief that in many mixed nerves vasodilator fibers really accompany the vasoconstrictors, but that the working of the first class is masked in our ordinary laboratory trials by the greater effect of their antagonists. When we stimulate a nerve we are obliged to impress the stimuli upon all the fibers in it; in the living body there is no such necessity. Under conditions specially devised it is possible to obtain results which lead to the view that vasodilators are widely distributed and bear a considerable part in the regulation of the circulation. Their existence in connection with skeletal muscles, glands, the skin of the face, and the tissues of the genitals is well recognized.

We are, therefore, to think of the nervous system as having two routes by which it can influence the beat of the heart and two by which it can modify the degree of contraction of the blood-vessels. There is the possibility of inhibition of the heart through the vagi and the possibility of inhibiting the tone of blood-vessels through the dilators. The heart can be driven to greater contractile activity by means of its accelerators and the blood-vessels can be contracted in a greater degree by the vasoconstrictors. The correspondence is helpful, even though we have to do in the one case with rhythmic, and in the other with sustained, action. But it is only fair to add that in the case of the heart the inhibitory mechanism appears to be more important than its antagonist, while the vasoconstrictors seem to have a more conspicuous influence

than do the vasodilators in securing the proper distribution of the blood. In short, the heart is most of the time inhibited to some extent, while the blood-vessels are most of the time definitely contracted. Their condition is such that they may be contracted more, or more relaxed, as a result of variations in the activity of the vasoconstrictor center.

The chief value of the nervous equipment of the heart must lie in making it possible to speed up the circulation when there is a call for more oxygen and for the rapid removal of wastes from the tissues. Muscular activity is the occasion when this need is most urgent and when the response of the heart is most striking. In a more moderate degree the heart is required to maintain a more active circulation after the taking of a full meal. The combined effect of vigorous exercise and a recent dinner probably constitutes a maximal demand upon the reserve power of the heart.

Vasomotor adaptations serve to satisfy local, as contrasted with general, needs. Activity in any limited portion of tissue, as in a gland or in a small group of muscles, can be supported without making an appeal to the heart. It is only necessary that the blood-vessels leading to the active region shall be dilated so as to conduct thither a somewhat larger share than usual of the total stream. This circumscribed increase in blood-supply will mean a certain subtraction from the flow in other directions, but if a single small gland is to be compared with all the rest of the body we must admit that the loss shared by so many organs may easily be imperceptible in any one of them. When a relatively large mass of tissue has its vessels dilated, there is often a compensatory constriction somewhere else. The foremost illustration of this principle is found in the reciprocal relation between the surface of the body and the deeper parts. We observe that heat applied to the skin increases the flow of blood through the heated area; reason and experience both show that when such an increase occurs

the internal vessels must be less dilated than they were before.

Some space may well be devoted to a discussion of the effects of external temperature on the distribution of the blood. When we have evidence of increased blood-content in any part we say that a congestion exists. When the skin is flushed as a result of being warmed, it may be said to be congested, though the word is so often used of abnormal conditions that we may prefer the milder term "hyperemic." Congestions are of two types, active and passive. In both there is a local excess of blood, but in the active form it is blood swiftly flowing through widely opened vessels, while in the passive sort it is blood arrested or dammed up, a state which naturally suggests a venous obstruction.

The congestion produced in the skin by heat is active in character. A glance at the swollen veins convinces one that they are carrying a great volume of blood out of the flushed region. The reaction is a serviceable one; it tends to rid the body of heat, both by increasing radiation and conduction from the skin and by sustaining the activity of the sweat-glands, which at such a time secrete much water to be evaporated. If the external temperature is so high that the body is cooler than its surroundings, the radiation and conduction transfers may be reversed, but it remains important to have an abundant circulation in support of the secretion of sweat. There is at present some doubt as to how far the increase of blood-flow which heat produces in the skin is a reflex and how far a direct effect of the high temperature.

When the skin is moderately cooled, it becomes pale, the obvious sign of diminished blood-flow. This prevents a wasteful loss of heat to the exterior and so conserves the bodily resources. But everyone knows that more pronounced cooling will shortly induce a reddening. How does the redness produced by cold differ from that produced by heat? Investigation of this question is easily conducted. If one hand is put into very cold water and

the other into water as hot as can be borne, both hands will be red, but certain differences will be quickly apparent. It has been said that the veins in the heated hand are swollen; in the chilled hand they are small and dark. This fact, taken in connection with the tendency of the cold skin to become bluish, shows that the congestion produced by cold is of a passive nature. Much blood is in the area, but it is making only slow progress through it. The condition is best accounted for on the theory that a marked contraction has occurred in the microscopic veins, holding back the blood in the capillaries, which accordingly swell even though the arteries leading to them may be below their average size at the time. (It is the amount of blood in the capillaries which determines the color of the surface.)

The capacity of the vasomotor system to make appropriate responses to changes of external temperature is far from equal in different subjects. What we call "vital resistance"—the power to withstand exposure without ill effects—must depend largely upon the extent of this capacity. It is probable that the variable feature is not so much in the execution of the primary reaction to weather changes, as in the reliability of the secondary adjustment, the promptness and vigor of the rebound to normal vasomotor conditions after a disturbance. The person who quickly develops a "glow" after a cold bath is a living demonstration of such a vasomotor resilience, and we know that such a person is not likely to take cold or to be otherwise upset after being caught in a shower or obliged to sit in a chilly place. Still we must not fail to reckon with other factors than the vasomotor when we compare susceptibilities; there are always chemical as well as mechanical differences between two human bodies, and the bacteriologist refers to peculiarities of chemical endowment when he speaks of the superior resistance of this or that man to infecting agents. It is well for us to keep both considerations in sight. If two men fall through the ice and both escape unfortunate consequences, it is entirely conceivable that the immunity in one case may be due to

vasomotor reactions which guard against the persistence of conditions which invite infection, and in the other to specific properties of the blood.

Something should be said of the vasomotor adjustment for changes in position. This is a matter often ignored by the writers of physiologic text-books, but it does not require much reflection to convince one that it is of high importance. The inevitable influence of gravity on the blood is to add to the pressure in all vessels below the heart and to subtract from the pressure in those above the level of that organ. The actual pressure of the blood in any vessel is the resultant of a certain quantity referable to the energy of the heart-beat plus or minus a quantity due to the elevation of the locality as compared with that of the heart. If the body were always erect, the situation might be met, one may suppose, by the development of thicker and less yielding walls in the vessels of the lower extremities, but, in reality, there has to be provision for changes from the horizontal to the upright position, and even for bringing the head to occupy the lowest place.

When a man rises from his bed he does not normally feel any distinct faintness or dizziness as he would if there were a serious impairment of blood-supply to his brain. Yet the tendency for the blood to forsake the higher arcs of the circulation and to distend the lower ones must be a very positive force. It is manifest when there is actual faintness, the individual being comparatively comfortable while lying down, though he may be utterly unable to sit up. We have to conclude that in health the shifting of the blood is prevented with singular efficiency by the establishment of a higher vasomotor tone in the vessels on which the added pressure falls. This is one of the first functions to fail when disturbing conditions arise; it is the lack of this reaction which "confines one to his bed" when sick. Compensation for the head-down position probably never comes to be perfect. We see even in acrobats of long experience the intense flushing of the face when the head is hanging down, as in swinging by the feet from a trapeze.

We have seen that the vasomotor system makes important and widespread changes in the distribution of the blood under the influence of changes of the external temperature, and that it exercises its powers to guard against injurious modifications in distribution when the posture is shifted. We have also stated the general principle that this system dilates (or permits the relaxation of) vessels at any center of unusual activity. It would be easy to extend this discussion by including other instances of vasomotor accommodation. A most interesting and suggestive case is the reaction which accompanies sleep. This and the reciprocal case of the reaction that comes with fixation of attention may be left to be dealt with in another chapter.

Other Autonomic Functions.—Besides regulating the beat of the heart and the local blood-supply, the autonomic fibers convey impulses to contractile structures not related to the circulatory system. The government of the alimentary canal is carried on by means of such paths. Here, as with the heart, there is a resident automatic power in the walls of the tube, and what the nervous system does is to modify the intrinsic tendency to tonic, rhythmic, and progressive (peristaltic) action. A long time ago, in the present treatment, it was said that inhibitory rather than excitatory influences are the rule in this department of nervous control. It will be convenient to discuss the extent of autonomic government of the digestive tract when we come to the abnormalities observed in the neurasthenic. Autonomic impulses to the bladder and reproductive organs are apt to be excitatory, though here again the double possibility of reinforcement and inhibition remains.

A division of the autonomic system which is of minor significance, but interesting because it is curious, is the pilomotor part. Under this head we include the fibers which go to the scattering development of plain muscle found in the skin. The contractile elements so placed are attached to hairs which may be rudimentary and scarcely

noticeable. When the muscle-cells contract under nervous influence, either erection of the hairs or the risings of the skin known as "goose-flesh" may be caused. Occasions on which the hair "stands on end" are apparently rare in human experience, but they are common enough in the life of the cat. This animal has an excellent pilomotor system.

Of more importance is glandular control. The autonomic system includes nerve-paths of the standard type (preganglionic and postganglionic fibers) to many organs of secretion. This is conspicuously the case with the sweat-glands. It is true, too, of the tear-glands, the salivary glands, and those in the lining of the stomach. It is certainly true of the adrenal bodies and probably of the thyroid and the pancreas. There is less certainty regarding a direct nervous control of the intestinal glands, the liver, and the kidneys. When glands are active it is to be expected that vasomotor support will be given to them through the wide dilation of their blood-vessels. But the kind of nervous control of which we are now speaking is believed to be exerted upon the epithelial cells forming and discharging the product. Typic secretory activity may be promoted in two ways by the autonomic system: by this direct stimulation of the working cells of the gland and, indirectly, by the enlisting of the vasomotors to secure a freer circulation. In some glands—for example, the kidney—it is the volume of the blood-flow on which the performance of the gland chiefly depends. When this is the case it becomes difficult to decide whether government of the other order, that is, by true secretory fibers, surely exists.

CHAPTER X

THE CEREBRUM

A STUDY of comparative anatomy shows that, on the whole, there is a gradation in the development of the cerebrum which corresponds fairly well with the degree of intelligence and the variety of reaction which different animals exhibit. In the brain of man this division reaches its most conspicuous rank. For at least a hundred years the correlation of intelligence with the cerebral evolution and especially with the extent of the cortex has been universally accepted. It is said that only two animals have cerebral hemispheres more massive than those of man. These are the elephant and the whale; in both, the great size of the body removes the brain from any comparison with that of man. In fact, the brain of the whale is relatively small.

Starling says that in proportion as the cerebrum becomes prominent, the possibility of predicting what response will follow the giving of a certain stimulus diminishes. The animal is less and less machine-like. This is closely connected with the fact that two animals of the same species can show individual traits to an extent which is determined by the importance assumed by the cerebrum in the reactions of that species. One rabbit does not differ in very many respects from another; two cats are quite unlike and may be said to have character or personality. In Chapter III the point was made that the higher type of nervous system is that in which individual as well as racial acquisitions are stored. We may now add that such storage is the particular—though perhaps not the exclusive—work of the cerebrum.

If two persons could exchange their spinal cords, both being in good health, it does not appear that the

exchange would be attended by any remarkable gain or loss to either. The slight and limited spinal reflexes would not be likely to be at all strange or unfamiliar to the new possessors of the transferred equipment. If each could now take for his own the medulla of his fellow, he might notice a certain strangeness in his reactions. Vasomotor idiosyncrasies might be realized. The heart might alter its average rate. Experience might reveal changes in the capacity of the digestive system under new central government. Now, if the cerebellum were also to be carried over from A to B and the corresponding part removed from B and given to A, the results would probably be much more positive. Peculiarities of gait, accomplishments or shortcomings in the line of equilibration, skill in dancing or swimming—any of these might go with one cerebellum to the new owner.

The paragraph above suggests what is undoubtedly true of man, that some acquisitions are registered in the cerebellum if not lower down in the nervous system. But when all allowance has been made for this we feel sure that the man who had surrendered his spinal cord, his medulla, and his cerebellum to another, receiving alien structures in their stead, would still be essentially himself. One almost shrinks from contemplating the imaginary exchange of one cerebrum for another. To do this must be in a most literal sense to "give one's self away." So far as we can see, the stock of memories and associations which A regarded as exclusively his would begin to determine the behavior of the organism still wearing the outward appearance of B.

This fabulous presentation merely enforces the contention of Loeb that the cerebrum is the chief organ of associative memory.¹ Animals in which it is not much developed have little capacity to learn anything by experience. In proportion as it becomes dominant in the nervous system, memory becomes the basis of action

¹ "Comparative Physiology of the Brain" (in Science Series), New York, 1900.

and individuality becomes inevitable. Memory is used in two senses. Speaking subjectively, we use it to mean conscious recollection. We can use it in a purely objective way to mean no more than the modification of reactions resulting from individual contacts with the environment. When we say that "the burnt child dreads the fire" we usually mean that the child recalls with distress an unfortunate occurrence in its past. But the condition can be indicated in quite another way. We may say that the nervous system of the child has been so altered by a past impression upon it that it will cause the child to draw back from the fire. A type of action is implied which is essentially reflex.

The boy, like the moth, may be attracted by the flame until the negative reaction has been established; the difference between the two nervous systems compared lies to a great extent in the capacity of the higher one to be modified by use, the lower one persisting in its hereditary response regardless of consequences. The burnt moth probably does not "dread the fire" in either the psychologic or the physiologic sense. The contrast set forth is that between a system without any part closely corresponding to a cerebrum and one in which this department is dominant.

The general conception outlined is justified by the results of experiments in which animals of various kinds are deprived of their cerebral hemispheres and kept alive for observation. The consequences of the loss are grave just in proportion to the part played by individual experience in the government of the organism. Most fishes survive the operation with no clear sign of deficiency. When this is not strictly true it is because the particular fish studied has been one which was regulated in its movements by the impulses derived from the organ of smell. It must not be forgotten that this sense organ and no other is detached from the remainder of the nervous system when the cerebrum is destroyed. It is said that sharks, which have been made "decerebrate," as the term

goes, are very sluggish. But this does not mean that they were greatly dependent upon the organization of the cerebrum; they can be just as seriously affected if their olfactory receptors are destroyed, the cerebrum remaining intact.

A frog is regarded as a higher animal than a fish. A decerebrate frog, however, departs so slightly from a normal one as to force us to conclude that here, as in the fish, the cerebrum has no important influence on the behavior of the animal under the ordinary conditions of life. It is commonly stated, however, that there are real points of difference between normal and decerebrate frogs. The latter are entirely able to swim and hop, but they will not save themselves from death in a pan of water when it is slowly warmed.¹

The classic instance of the profound effects following the removal of the cerebrum from an animal of high grade was afforded by the experiments of Flourens, in France, early in the nineteenth century. He subjected pigeons to the operation, which is rather a simple one to perform upon the bird. The descriptions which he gave have been modified by modern students to make allowance for the well-marked recovery of pigeons from the immediate shock of the procedure. In this case, as in that of the cerebellum, it is only the lasting consequences of the loss that we have a right to emphasize. Observers have not been wholly agreed concerning the nature of the deficiency in all its details, but it seems safe to say that a pigeon without a cerebrum gives no further sign of memory or feeling.

To see such a pigeon is an instructive experience, and especially when the spectator takes account of his own emotional reaction. He is likely to anticipate that he

¹ Burnett (*American Journal of Physiology*, 1912, xxx, 80) has observed that decerebrate frogs definitely lack the power shown by the intact animals to become "used to" certain pathways. A trace of adaptation on the part of individuals to their surroundings seems, therefore, to be represented in the cerebral equipment of these animals.

will feel pity for the mutilated animal. Instead, he cannot watch it long without finding it amusing. He becomes convinced that it is not a sensitive and suffering creature, but an elaborate mechanical toy. It adjusts itself to external conditions with great success so far as the immediate exigency is concerned, but with no anticipation of the future nor reminiscence of the past. In default of stimulation it is relatively inert. It is customary to say that it does nothing spontaneously. The word, however, is a vague one and may well be avoided. An action is called "spontaneous" when we cannot tell how it was caused. Some actions of the decerebrate bird may be placed in this class.

A pigeon without a cerebrum can be kept alive for weeks, but only by constant care. It will not find food or water for itself, though they may be placed in its cage. In flying and walking it passes around obstacles, but all the evidence goes to show that there is no appreciation of the objects in its path. Another pigeon exists for it simply as a mass of matter, with no more power to stimulate than a block of wood. The former mate or the young bird appealing for food—these are treated merely as things with which a collision is to be avoided. It is clear that the eyes serve well to regulate locomotion with reference to the surroundings, but they are deprived of the power to cause any reaction based upon the individual experience of the bird.

Detailed accounts of the behavior of the decerebrate pigeon may be found in larger works and they are full of interest. The main points to be insisted on are (1) that the muscular capabilities of the bird remain little impaired in the absence of the cerebrum, and (2) that these muscular activities no longer signify that memories connected with the past life of the pigeon are aroused. It is probably fair to claim that the word "memory" in this statement can be used either in its subjective or objective sense. Moreover, it is not only the previous accumulation which is destroyed, but also the possibility of ac-

quiring new impressions which can furnish grounds of conduct.

The removal of the cerebrum from a mammal without causing the immediate death of the animal might well seem an incredible feat of surgery. Nevertheless, it has succeeded in a number of cases. The most celebrated of these has been the one which is referred to as Goltz's dog. By three carefully conducted operations the entire mass of the cerebral hemispheres and, unintentionally, somewhat more of the brain was broken up and washed away. The dog was kept alive and narrowly observed for a year and a half after the final operation. It was then killed and the autopsy showed the thoroughness of the destruction. Its health and strength had been declining for some time before it was sacrificed.

The decerebrate dog afforded a general confirmation of the inferences drawn from the pigeon. It was idiotic, but not crippled in any department of its mechanical activities. A noteworthy fact was that it was restless rather than sluggish. Its aimless rovings supported the opinion quite widely held that an important function of the cerebrum is to inhibit the action of the lower brain centers. Sometimes the dog appeared to sleep, but, if we are right in our interpretation, its waking was not to consciousness, but only to somnambulism. It showed no fear or affection. It would snap at the hand of a tormentor, but only under the direct stimulus of provocation; it would not harbor a grudge against him.

Concerning the human being, of course we do not have evidence from deliberate experiment, but we have the facts in a vast number of clinical cases. A surprising and instructive one has been reported quite recently. Edinger and Fischer¹ have described the condition of a defective child that died of tuberculosis when nearly four years old. It had made no appreciable progress in acquiring new reactions from the day of its birth. It usually lay in apparent sleep, seemed to be blind, and could not be said

¹ Archiv f. d. ges. Physiologie, 1913, clii, 535.

to show any token of consciousness. The postmortem examination showed entire lack of the cerebral hemispheres.

When we compare this shocking instance with the case of the dog or the pigeon, we are led to believe that the human cerebrum is of such overwhelming dominance that many functions which in the lower animals can be subserved by other parts of the brain have been largely transferred to it. In man it is probable that the subordinate centers for the eyes are incapable of any extensive or useful reaction when their cerebral connections are severed. It is not likely that the power to balance and to walk could be preserved in man as in the dog through the agency of the midbrain, cerebellum, and medulla without the cerebrum. To be sure, the decerebrate child had never learned to walk, and it might be urged that the cerebrum might be essential for the attentive act of learning and not for exercising the power when acquired. But we have many other cases in which the ability to walk was lost when only a limited part of the cerebrum had suffered injury.

In apes, which approach the human type of organization, the loss of a restricted region from the cerebrum is said to lead to absolute blindness so far as can be determined. The power to avoid obstacles, so striking in the dog and the pigeon, entirely disappears. In all probability, a decerebrate human being would be deaf, despite the fact that the auditory nerve would retain its connection with the medulla and so with the remainder of the nervous system. Pigeons without the cerebrum respond to certain sounds by sluggish movements.

Granting, as we must, that the cerebrum is essential to intelligence and to all action based upon individual experience, we are at once led to inquire whether it is all alike or whether particular parts have particular functions. In other words, is there cerebral localization of a definite character? This question was asked by Flourens long ago, and he attempted to answer it on the basis of

further experiments on pigeons. He came to believe that one part is like another and that the result of an injury is determined by its extent and not by its position. Speaking somewhat crudely, it may be said that this view made the working of the brain comparable with that of the liver: all its parts were supposed to be working in the same way and all its functions would suffer—quantitatively rather than qualitatively—from a circumscribed injury.

From the time of Flourens to the present scientific opinion has shifted back and forth in a curious manner. In his own career he found himself called upon to defend his claims against a school of ingenious persons who upheld the doctrine of a very precise localization of cerebral properties. This teaching was presently known as phrenology¹ and attracted much notice. In the beginning the phrenologists were sincere in purpose and more or less scientific in method. Their successors departed widely from the early traditions of the school, and are now found in the purlieus of our cities along with palmists and clairvoyants. The general conception was beginning to be discredited when Holmes² wrote of it so incisively. Regarding the claim that it is possible to tell what is within the skull by measuring its slight convexities and depressions, he well said that this was like laying one's finger on the iron wall of a safe and saying: "Under this spot lies a ten-dollar bill."

Francis Joseph Gall, the Austrian founder of phrenology, seems to have had little interest in the brain as related to the body, but much in its assumed correlation with mental endowments and defects. He and his disciples made careful measurements of the contours of the head in all types of men, from the most gifted to the most defective and depraved. A prominence upon the surface of the

¹ The article "Phrenology" in the Encyclopedia Britannica can be recommended.

² "The Professor at the Breakfast Table," Riverside Edition, 195-200.

skull was supposed to indicate an extra cerebral development beneath, and if a special merit or failing coexisted in the individual the notable feature of the brain was held to be responsible for it. This summary statement is scarcely just to the pioneers in phrenology, for they did not commit themselves until they had a great mass of data. They published large books, conducted periodicals, and even had museums in which the comparative study of human skulls was carried on.

A cursory glance at their later writings shows how disingenuous they became. They showed an unrivaled skill in getting around difficulties. A certain protuberance was held to indicate a certain propensity, but its occasional absence from a subject in whom that propensity was well marked did not cause them any trouble. In such a case they said that the subdivision of the brain under discussion had been worn down by excessive activity. This would seem to require a plasticity of the cranial bones beyond that commonly observed. When external measurements were made upon the forehead it was somewhat hard to allow for the variable extent of the frontal sinuses, cavities which occur in that bone, but they did not fret themselves about that.

Phrenology lost the respect of conscientious men of science before the middle of the century. The prevalent feeling was one of skepticism regarding all claims for localization of function in the cerebrum. When, after an interval, new ideas concerning the connection of particular properties with particular regions began to be advanced, it was in a totally different spirit from that of the old teachings. The new localization was of the control of bodily functions and only guardedly extended to the problems of the mental life. The return to the belief that the cerebrum is not all alike may be said to date from 1870. It made headway rapidly for about twenty-five years and has been followed by another reaction, so that present-day writing on the subject is cautious and conservative.

The performances of the cerebral cortex have been likened to those of an orchestra. The comparison would have been acceptable either to an old-fashioned phrenologist or to a believer in the diffuse distribution of brain activity. A series of solos by different instruments would symbolize the phrenologic conception; a harmonious production of music by many or all the players would represent the other interpretation. Local injury, according to the first view, would be the silencing of a solo instrument and would cause intervals of stillness in the symphony. If the second view were found to be correct, the local damage would not result in absolute interruption of the music, but only in lessening its volume and richness.

It is difficult to say exactly what is meant by "cerebral localization." In all probability, the term does not mean the same to different people who use it. It would seem that to some it has meant that definite regions of the cortex are in receipt of certain impressions, and can, at a later time, give rise to impulses determined by these stored impressions. Descartes must have had some such an idea as this when he likened the retention of memories to the imprint of a seal upon wax. Quite another view is possible, and, indeed, it is the preferred one at the present time. This is the conception that a given function appears to be connected with a given area simply because so many of the paths necessary to that function lie within the patch of cortex in question.

To appreciate the modern interpretation of the working of the cerebrum it is necessary to keep always before one the reflex principle. We readily apply this principle to the spinal cord. Impulses flow in and, in consequence, others are sent out. It is not difficult to extend this to the medulla, the midbrain, and the cerebellum; the chief difference between the responses from these parts and from the cord lies in the greater length of the pathways pursued by the impulses, the greater number of synapses crossed, and the increased capacity for variation. When

we consider the cerebrum we are too apt to assume that conditions there differ radically from those at lower stations. We cannot ignore the relation of the cerebral structures to our consciousness, but we shall escape much confusion if we hold fast so far as we may to the reflex arc as the fundamental fact in the organization.

Impulses enter the cerebral cortex from the afferent division of the nervous system as they enter other parts of the gray matter. Only here the direction which may be given to these impulses is far less certain than in the lower central complexes. The net of pathways has that individual character which has been emphasized, and because of this no two cerebral cortices can react in just the same manner. The great number of simultaneous processes going on in the cerebrum results in apparent collisions and interferences which make it still harder to predict the effect produced by a stimulus—be it sight, sound, or other external influence. Finally, a most important fact about cerebral reaction is the indefinitely long time that may elapse between the stimulus and the expressed result. A condition which operated on the cortex at a certain time may seem to have been wholly ineffective, but it may modify the reaction to another stimulus much later. A bit of information which was read with indifference and apparently forgotten may shape one's course of conduct in a future emergency.

It is held by some, among others by Morton Prince, that nothing is ever forgotten. Difficulties and limitations in the way of recollecting must be admitted, but it remains probable that every impression made upon the cortical organization is a permanent one. Every stimulus modifies the cortical structure in some degree, and it is forever unlike what it would have been if that stimulus had never been applied to the receptors. The psychologic corollary is that we are likely to recall under particular conditions anything that we have ever heard, read, or witnessed. The difficulty is to control the "conditions" referred to. The images from the distant past, often of very trivial

objects and situations, which arise in our dreams favor the belief of Prince.

The writer was recently contemplating a visit to a house where he often went as a child. In a dream he thought he entered this house and presently heard a peculiar humming noise made by water running in the pipes. On waking he knew that he had heard this sound in the place in question fully thirty years before. The retention of the memory had not the slightest interest or value.

We must now attempt to connect the view that the cortical reactions are essentially reflexes, though often delayed and modified by many factors, with modern doctrines of localization. A brief discussion of the "motor areas" will be in order. It was discovered in 1870 by German investigators that electric stimulation applied to the cerebral cortex of the dog at certain, definite places

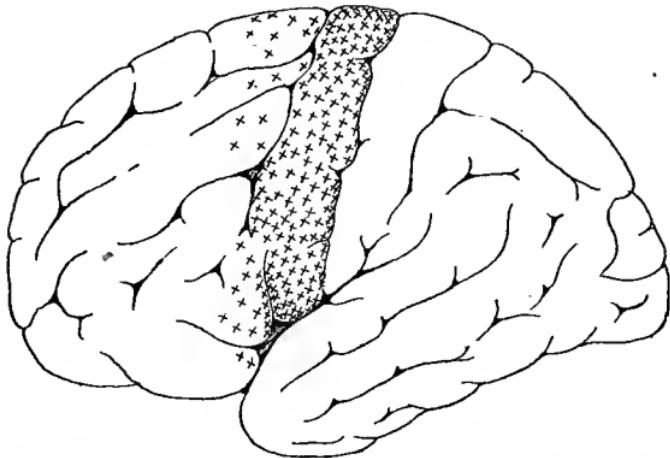


Fig. 23.—The human cerebrum is sketched from the left side. The crosses are sprinkled on the area from which the muscles of the right half of the body appear to be governed. This area extends out of sight over the top of the brain and dips into the fissure between the two hemispheres.

calls into play the muscles of the body in a manner which can be predicted. The muscles thrown into contraction

are for the most part on the opposite side of the body. In the ape motor areas exist in the same sense: excitation of the cortical neurons at certain spots leads regularly to movements made by corresponding groups of muscles. It is known that the same representation of the muscular system in mosaic form can be demonstrated on the surface of the cerebrum in man (Fig. 23). These areas are evidently unlike each other and unlike the neighboring areas from which electric stimulation elicits no visible reaction. They are believed to contain the perikarya, from which motor projection fibers extend downward to make synaptic connections with neurons which directly innervate the muscles.

But in our discussion of fatigue we have insisted that the perikarya at the origin of any set of projection fibers cannot be regarded as the ultimate source of the impulses which traverse these fibers. By losing sight of this fact many writers have probably made too much of the cerebral motor areas. They have been spoken of as though they were creative in function or as though they were certainly the precise spots where the metaphysical force impinged upon the material mechanism. Loeb protested against such naïve views and presented the alternative with great clearness in his "Comparative Physiology of the Brain."

Activity in the motor areas doubtless precedes most of our muscular activity. But what takes place in the motor areas is the result of currents arriving within their boundaries from other parts of the brain. So the responsibility is shifted to these other regions, and from these again to others. The true fountain-head is not found in the cerebrum at all, but in the receptors of the afferent system or in the energies of the external world. When this is said we merely reiterate the statement that the type of nervous action is the reflex, and that we cannot make an exception of those processes which are directed through the cerebrum. "Through" rather than "by" is the preposition, and the distinction is of the greatest importance.

The central exchange of the telephone system is an impressive example of intricate mechanism, but it is, after all, an intermediate point, and its function is to give direction rather than to originate communications. More damage can be done to the whole system by destroying the exchange than by attacking any other single feature, but it is evident that cutting all the wires at various places would have the same crippling effect. This is a fair analogy to help one to understand the present conception of the cortical centers. They are not believed to originate impulses, excepting as impulses come to them; their peculiarity is found in the fact that in them a vast number of neural arcs of correlated function are brought so close together as to be readily subjected either to stimulation or to damage.

This may be maintained as well for other areas of the brain as for the motor regions. For example, certain portions of the cortex at the back of the cerebrum, particularly where the surface of each hemisphere is infolded and lies against the surface of its fellow, are held to be visual centers. It is reported that injury to these fields impairs the usefulness of the eyes and, if sufficiently extensive, causes complete loss of sight. These are regions which visual impulses enter after having been relayed by the midbrain structures, and they are regions from which impulses are normally sent away to other parts of the brain so that other actions may be modified as a result of the inflow from the eyes. To destroy such areas (on both sides) is to destroy useful vision, but it is really a system of pathways which has been interrupted and not a repository of visual impressions.

If we reduce all the activities of the cerebrum to elaborated reflexes and, as such, demand for them external causation, immediate or past, what becomes of freedom of the will? This is a troublesome and unwelcome question which different thinkers have answered in different fashion. It may be thought to lie outside the proper sphere of the physiologist, but it confronts him

when he becomes a teacher of hygiene. It haunts every man of science, as it has haunted theologians and philosophers of all ages. Many have been brought to the essential position of Jonathan Edwards, which was, in brief, the view that we are free to do what we will, but not to will what we shall do. Candid scientists often admit with Münsterberg¹ that one must alternate between two views without seeking to reconcile them; as an investigator one must look for material causes, but for the sake of moral power and conviction one must hold fast the belief in free agency, which has always commended itself to the men who have done most for the world.

Another assertion of Münsterberg may be quoted at this point. Many writers constantly refer to the "subconscious mind" in their discussions of brain activity. Is it not better, asks the psychologist, to reserve the word "mind" for that which is conscious? Physiologists will certainly agree to this; most of the action of the nervous system is subconscious, but nothing would seem to be gained by calling such action mental.

¹ "Psychotherapy," Moffat, Yard & Co., New York, 1909, chap. iii.

CHAPTER XI

THE CEREBRUM AND HUMAN DEVELOPMENT

THE motor areas of the cerebral cortex were first demonstrated by experiments upon the dog, and later shown to exist in the brain of the ape. In the cerebrum of man they are known to occupy a similar position and to have the same properties. This is to say, that when points within them are electrically excited, movements result, and chiefly on the part of muscles on the opposite side of the body. The subdivisions of the general motor area are permanent in the sense that the same group of muscles always responds when a selected spot is stimulated. The areas are better developed in man than in the ape, and better in the ape than in the dog or the cat. This is in harmony with the fact that muscular movements in the lower animals are largely governed by means of reflex arcs that do not ascend into the cerebrum. It follows naturally that injury to the motor regions in man results in irreparable interference with muscular movements, though we have seen that in the dog the entire cerebrum may be destroyed and the power of locomotion remain.

It may seem strange that the existence of motor areas should have been proved for the human brain. The facts are as follows: In certain types of epilepsy it was noted long ago that each attack is ushered in by an invariable initial movement. The closing of one fist or the drawing of the lips toward one side may give a reliable warning of the approaching convulsion. When it became known that definite motor areas occur in the brain of the ape, the surgeons conjectured that homologous areas might be assumed to have their place in the brain of man, and

that such cases of epilepsy as those referred to might be due to mechanical sources of irritation acting at the subcenter for that part which was first moved at each seizure. In the course of time operations for the relief of epilepsy were undertaken. Acting on the theory that the brain of man is similar in its large features to that of the ape, the surgeons plotted in advance the presumptive position of the motor areas in general, and of that one in particular which was thought to be subject to abnormal stimulation. In very many cases the spot of cortex which they proceeded to expose was found to be under obvious pressure or otherwise affected by pathologic conditions. A measure of relief from the epileptic symptoms followed such operations, though complete cures were not usual.

When the surface of the human brain has been laid bare for these operations it has been possible to apply weak electric stimuli to its convolutions, and the movements made by the skeletal muscles of the subject have justified the belief that the organization here is, indeed, closely similar to that in the ape. Microscopic study supports this view. A conspicuous system of projection fibers can be traced from the supposed motor regions inward through the internal white matter of the cerebrum and thence down the brain-stem. In the medulla the great majority of these fibers cross the midline and pass down the cord on the side opposite to that of their origin. They form synapses with motor cells of the cord and so command the muscles.

The impression prevails that a portion of the cortex just posterior to the motor areas has as a distinctive property the reception of afferent impulses from various parts of the body. It must be remembered that incoming impulses from without the central nervous system never find an uninterrupted path to this level; the original neurons do not pass above the medulla, if, as a matter of fact, they extend so far. It is by synaptic relays that transmission to the cerebral cortex is secured. If we adopt the usual conception of the cortical centers, these areas of reception

are significant chiefly as they forward impulses to other places. As Loeb has said, this is a dynamic rather than a static form of localization. As this is true of the sensory impulses from the body at large, so it is probably true for the more highly developed sense organs, such as the eye and the ear.

In the brain of man, as in that of the monkey, the visual impulses—or, rather, the impulses of visual origin—are projected to the hinder part of the cortex and, chiefly, to the area called the cuneus. This is a distinctly marked triangle set off by fissures upon the surface of the occipital lobe which confronts the corresponding area of the opposite side. As the relation between the cerebrum and the skeletal muscles is so largely a crossed or contralateral one, the inference might easily be drawn that the impulses from the right eye would be found to arrive in the cortex of the left side, but in the human organism this is not so. The relationship is less simple. Approximately half of each eye has efficient connections with the cerebral cortex on the same side. An able teacher has likened the situation to that of a driver with a pair of horses. His right hand holds the reins which connect with the right side of both the bits; his left hand is joined through the reins with the left side of both. Carrying this comparison over to the visual apparatus, it reads like this: the right occipital cortex is functionally related with the right halves of both the retinæ; the left cortex, with the left halves.

The general statement just made requires a qualification in view of a very interesting fact. There is in the center of each retina a restricted region, the fovea, which has superior visual possibilities. (When we speak of fixing the eye on an object we mean fixing the image of the object upon the fovea.) This part of the retina is believed to have a double representation on the cortex—both eyes projecting impulses to both sides of the brain. Thus, no injury confined to one side of the brain can be expected to destroy the use of either fovea. It can blot out nearly, but not quite, half of the field of vision. The

"central vision," which is of the foremost importance, is bound to survive, thanks to the reduplicated projection in the cortex.

The auditory path leads first to the medulla and thence, by repeated relays, to the cerebrum. The best marked projection of the impulses from the organ of hearing is

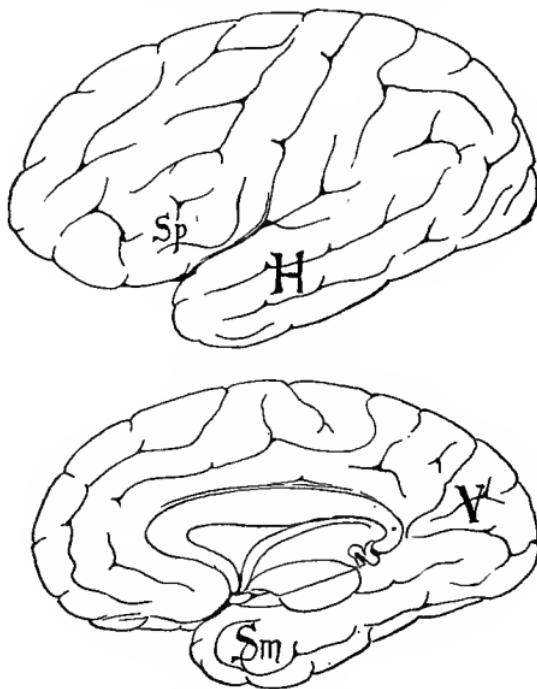


Fig. 24.—The upper figure represents the left hemisphere from outside, that is, from the left. The lower figure shows the internal or mesial aspect of the *right* hemisphere, that is, the right hemisphere from the left side. Areas usually claimed to possess special relations are marked as follows: *H*, hearing; *V*, vision; *Sm*, smell; *Sp*, speech.

upon the cortex of the temporal lobe, and damage to this part has often caused deafness. The effect is to impair more considerably the reactions from the opposite ear, though some limitation is imposed upon the usefulness of the ear of the same side. An area for the reception of impulses of olfactory origin is said to be well set off. It

is not far from the place of entrance of the olfactory fibers into the lower surface of the cerebral mass (Fig. 24).

While these several regions of the cerebral cortex have been mentioned with especial reference to man, little has been said so far that would not apply as well to the more highly developed animals. It is a question of great moment whether there are to be discovered in the brain clear and well-localized signs of human eminence. As to the answer to this question, there is, unhappily, a great deal of disagreement. Fifteen or twenty years ago the average writer would have felt warranted in more positive assertions than it is usual to make at the present time. But in spite of conservative tendencies there are some teachings which retain weight for most physiologists. The first and most sweeping of these is that the developments in brain organization which correspond with intellectual advance are one sided rather than symmetric.

Early metaphysicians, like Descartes, were troubled by the dual form of the brain. So long as they emphasized its connection with mind instead of body, such a double character seemed unreasonable. As soon as men began to view the brain in its relations with the paired muscles and sense organs of the body, its division into right and left halves appeared justified. But the desire to find in it some basis for a unity closer than that of two equal and coöperating halves was bound to rise again. Most investigators think that it has been fulfilled in the probable fact that one of the hemispheres is dominant and the other subordinate, so far as truly intelligent activities are concerned.

Most people are right handed. This means that the motor area on the *left* side of the brain has a superior organization. By this we now understand a superior richness of connections, association ties with other regions of the hemisphere. The majority of physiologists will probably go so far as to say that the machinery of intelligence lies more in the left than in the right half of the cerebrum in right-handed individuals. It is supposed that

in the left handed the balance is reversed: the right hemisphere is the dominant one. The most interesting claims made in support of such views have reference to the representation of language in the human brain.

The brain of an illiterate man is organized in such a way that oral expression of thought is possible and that the speech of others is comprehended. The educated man has, in addition, an equipment that makes possible the expression of thought in writing and its appreciation through reading. The answering of a question is an act of the reflex type, but one which requires for its execution the fullest development of brain paths. The manner of its accomplishment must depend upon innumerable past events. The destruction of certain connections might be expected to render it impossible to reply to the question. This is a state of things quite often realized. Brain disease is often signalized by disorders in the field of language. Such disorders are not sharply distinguished one from another, but the attempt is often made to classify them under several heads. In general, it may be said that the power to understand and to reproduce language is associated with connections made through the cortex of the left hemisphere excepting in left-handed subjects.

Long ago it was noted that in cases where there had been loss of intelligent speech during life a certain limited area in the left frontal region was often found abnormal on postmortem examination. This area became known as the speech center, and the interference with speech resulting from its impairment was named motor aphasia. The reputed center is probably a place within which many of the arcs which are necessary for vocal expression of ideas are brought close together. Motor aphasia is not an actual paralysis of the muscle groups required for speech. The use of the same parts for other purposes, such as swallowing, coughing, and even for voice production, when this is not strictly intelligent, may remain quite unimpaired.

The distinction between the intelligent and the merely

mechanical employment of the vocal organs may be illustrated by one of the many curious stories told of persons with aphasia. A man who suffered from an injury to the region assumed to bear this important relation to language lost all command of speech save that he still swore on occasions. This seriocomic state of affairs is not difficult to explain. Habitual profanity is scarcely a genuine form of speech; the few words used are repeated under the most varied circumstances with no specific appropriateness. They come to be little more than animal outcries. As such they might be expected to survive the wreck of the organization which has for its duty the rendering of thought in correctly chosen words. Thoughtful cursing would be an appalling performance.

Motor aphasias may differ in degree throughout all grades from a mere limitation in vocabulary to absolute abolition of speech. The individual characteristics of the cases are often of strange interest. A number of them are cited in a fascinating way by Thomson in his delightful book, "Brain and Personality."¹ We may refer to one shrewd deduction of this practitioner which seems highly suggestive. In a family of his acquaintance there were several children. One of them and only one showed a marked preference for using the left hand in the first and second years. A rather severe struggle followed, the parents and attendants seeking to make the child right handed. Its initial tendency was at length overruled and it grew up like its brothers and sisters. But in one respect its history was contrasted with theirs: all the others talked at an early age, while this child was distinctly backward.

Thomson's explanation is an attractive one. He suggests that in the brain of the child who showed the disposition to use the left hand rather than the right the organization of the right hemisphere had begun to forge ahead of that of the left. If there had been no interference from without, the pathways employed in the use of lan-

¹ Dodd, Mead & Co., New York, 1907.

guage would have been opened in the right hemisphere also. When the left hemisphere was forced to provide the nervous government for the skilled hand the mechanisms related to language had likewise to be furnished by that side of the cerebrum. Time was lost when the original foundations in the right hemisphere were abandoned in favor of new ones which had to be constructed in the left.

When the command of spoken language suffers it is commonly observed that the subject shows some loss of general intelligence and of the power to read and write. But there have been many cases in which one or another of these specific accomplishments has been more or less completely abolished without much impairment of the remaining functions. So we read of the loss of the ability to write consequent on damage to a region just above the speech center as usually indicated. The writing center, if it has as definite an existence in space as has been claimed for it, is near the motor area for the trained hand and may be thought of as a special extension of that area.

Sometimes the power to read is lost, though the victim is not blind. The letters are seen clearly enough, but do not rouse the associations which they had previously acquired. It is a set-back in education—a return to the condition of the child whose eyes are keen, but who has not learned to read. Since reading is a specially developed function of vision, it is not strange that a state like this has often attended injury to the hinder part of the cerebrum on the left side and outside the general visual region. Destructive processes near but not covering the supposed auditory area of the left temporal lobe have sometimes led to a condition described as "word deafness," sounds being distinctly heard, but words no longer serving to convey their old meanings. The experience is probably just that of listening to an unfamiliar foreign language.

The integral existence of four centers for language, that is, for vocal speech, writing, reading, and the translation of words spoken by others, is not so confidently maintained as it was a few years ago. If the true con-

ception of a "center" is merely that it is a place where a large number of paths related in function lie close together in the cortex, we shall expect to find that none of the uses of language can be cut off by local brain injury without reducing to some extent the other powers. This has been said to be observed, at least as a rule.

The attempt has been made to ascertain whether the apparent superiority of the left cortex can be demonstrated with the microscope. Mellus, of Johns Hopkins, has recently reported that sections made from the supposed speech center in a human brain and from the corresponding area on the opposite side have proved to be markedly unlike. The cortical layer on the left side was much thicker than that in the specimen used for comparison. The greater thickness seemed to denote a more extensive development of dendritic processes in the part held to have the special functions to fulfil. But these facts were not presented without a word of caution. The same investigator compared sections of cortex from the brain of a highly educated man and others from homologous localities in the brain of an ignorant Austrian peasant. The drawings made showed a decidedly more intricate organization in one case than in the other, but, contrary to the expectation of every one, the more imposing appearance was that of the uneducated brain!

No modern advocate of cerebral localization has approached the old phrenologic precision in denoting the functions of all regions. Large portions remain without designation other than that of "association areas." Through them, by few or many relays, we suppose that the connections are made which determine the reactions which shall occur under all circumstances. Histologists have made the general statement that only the areas which are definitely classed as motor or sensory have projection fibers mediating between them and lower levels of the nervous system. Beyond the boundaries of the areas immediately concerned with the delivery or the reception of impulses traveling to or from the

various parts of the body are extensive regions linked with them and with each other by paths composed of "association fibers." Hence the association areas seem to rank above the others in the cerebral organization, being one remove farther from the receptors and effectors in which the nervous system begins and ends.

Presumably it is the association areas which register most fully the details of the individual history, and so come to be in some sense the protoplasmic record of experience and of character. But the representation is diffuse, and the attempt to attribute a specific share to this or that fraction of the whole has not been very successful. The most attractive description of the association areas and the possible distribution of their work is that of Flechsig.¹ He has suggested that the association area which lies mainly in the parietal lobe is particularly engaged in correlating the impulses received in the primary sensory areas around it. The great frontal area which is more distinctly withdrawn from the sensory stations, but which adjoins the motor centers, may be supposed to transmit impulses to the cell groups controlling movement. The influence exerted through the frontal region is assumed to be largely of an inhibitory character.

If the views advanced by Flechsig were quite correct, it should be possible to find confirmatory evidence in the nature of insanity when induced by local brain disease. Degeneration in the parietal region might be expected to cause dulness, apathy, and inaction because the power to appreciate the significance of things seen, heard, and felt would be impaired. On the other hand, damage to the frontal convolutions might be expected to lead to erratic, ill-regulated conduct; perhaps to violence or depravity. The facts are not entirely in accord with the theory, but many individual cases are so, and it is possible that all can be explained under its broad provisions.

Clinical observations constantly impress upon us the

¹ Gehirn und Seele, Leipzig, 1896.

danger of being too dogmatic with regard to the local functions of the brain. We are reminded of this when we consider the extremely unequal results of various brain injuries. Sometimes profound effects follow what seems quite limited destruction; sometimes extensive lesions leave no noticeable deficiency. Gunshot wounds of the brain are usually fatal, but they are not always so, and it is to be remembered that a bullet penetrating the brain substance works havoc with the structure far beyond its own path, displacing the tissue and producing pressure in distant places. There have been extraordinary cases of immunity from serious consequences when the brain has suffered gross harm. Of those carefully recorded, none is more remarkable than that of Phineas Gage.¹

The accident which befell this man occurred in the year 1848, when the Rutland Railroad was under construction in southern Vermont. It happened near the village of Cavendish, where a rock cut was being made. Gage, who was one of the workmen, was tamping a charge of blasting-powder in a deep hole which had been drilled into the ledge. The explosive was ignited and the massive iron bar was torn from the hands of Gage and driven through his skull. It entered his left cheek and went out through the top of his head, having pushed before it a cylindric body of gray and white matter from the left hemisphere. The victim did not even lose consciousness. He survived for twenty years, and it is not known that he showed any abnormalities excepting blindness in the left eye. This was due to the clipping of the optic nerve on that side and not to any cerebral damage.

¹ See the statement of Gage's physician, Williams, in the guide-book of the Rutland Railroad, "The Heart of the Green Mountains," 1897. A divergent account in the Catalogue of the Warren Museum, where Gage's skull is preserved, states that there were some effects—irritability, profanity, irresolution, and, toward the end, epileptic seizures.

CHAPTER XII

THE CEREBRUM AND THE LIFE OF THE INDIVIDUAL

IN some of the tissues of the body there is a constant formation of new cells at every period of life. This is true of the skin, and is nowhere more evident than in the case of its outgrowths, the nails and the hair. In other tissues there is no addition to the original number of the cellular units. It has been stated in another connection (Chapter VIII) that no multiplication of the units occurs in the skeletal muscles, though there may be an increase in the diameter of the fibers. It is a most significant fact that in the nervous system the maximum number of the neurons appears to be attained very early, and hence any later change will mean a diminution. The great advances made from infancy onward to maturity are not based upon any corresponding multiplication of the neurons. They are accomplished in spite of a stationary or even decreasing number of these elements, and must be referred to the formation of new routes of communication among them.

It has been said that the limited powers of the nervous system in the newborn are indicative of the great individual development which awaits realization. This subject may now be pursued in some detail. The receptor system of the infant is probably complete. On the effector side the muscles, especially those of the legs, have yet to grow considerably to sustain a proper proportion to the total mass of the body, but they are fully provided with efferent fibers from the motor cells of the lower order in the cord and brain. The department of the nervous system which is farthest from its future condition is the intermediate

portion, the adjustor or association mechanism. The ties which will later determine the responses of the organism to all manner of stimuli have mostly to be established; only a few are congenital.

The light which enters the eyes of the newborn baby probably produces the same retinal processes which it will always produce. The optic paths lie ready to convey the resulting impulses to the brain. The lower centers in the midbrain and thereabouts may be traversed by these impulses quite as they will be in adult life, and the simpler eye reflexes, such as winking and contraction of the pupil, can be evoked. But the radiation of the impulses from the visual centers in the cerebral hemispheres is probably insignificant. A few months later the child reaches in the right direction to grasp objects which are brought into the range of its vision. Physiologically speaking, this means that a serviceable bond of union has been established between the receiving station for the visual impulses and the area from which the motor impulses take their departure from the cerebrum. When the head is turned toward the source of a sound it seems reasonable to conclude that a similar connection has been secured between the auditory and the motor regions.

These physiologic gains are undoubtedly accompanied by mental advances of a parallel sort. In a passage of great literary beauty George A. Gordon¹ has sketched the attainment of psychologic correlation between sensations mediated by different paths. He points out that for the baby a month old the mother is represented by a visual image, a voice, and a comforting touch. The three sensations have nothing in common save the fact that they are welcome to the infant consciousness. A momentous step is taken when they are first conceived to originate in the same entity—a “benign power,” as the author cited has expressed it. On the material side this revelation to the mind of the child must be conditioned by the opening

¹ “Ultimate Conceptions of Faith,” Houghton, Mifflin & Co., Boston, 1903, 102–104.

of new association paths in the cerebrum. When, after an interval, the child finds a name for the mother we have evidence of an additional evolution of such bonds.

All of education, from infancy to the fulness of development, is of this same type. "Reaction to stimulation" is the term which covers almost all which the organism does, but the capacity to react is always qualified by the entire past history of the individual. Every incident in the course of life has left its impression. The formation of habits is the symbol of the channeling which is proceeding in the cortex. This fact has been alluded to in the chapter on Reflexes and it may now be enlarged upon. In infancy a very few repetitions of a reaction may make it a matter of regular recurrence or, in other words, a habit. This is partly due, we may suppose, to the plastic nature of the tissue involved and partly to the absence of paths of prior formation.

When the word "habit" is used, the connotation is likely to be a disagreeable one. But this ought not to be so, for it is the power to form habits which is the basis of human progress and efficiency. If it were not possible to acquire the ability to perform many acts as though they were reflexes, making no demand upon the attention, we should never advance far in our individual development. If the task of dressing one's self remained as laborious and continued to require the same thoughtful planning in later life as in the days of childhood, when it was first accomplished, one would lose just so much time and strength which is actually available for fresh lines of thinking. As each necessary act becomes, as we say, second nature, the mind is released for new conquests.

The late William James¹ wrote most wisely of the advantages and the dangers incident to our habit-forming propensity. It was his suggestion that habits can be placed in three classes: those which are clearly the best possible, those which are plainly undesirable, and a great

¹ "Psychology, Briefer Course," Henry Holt & Co., New York, 1892, chapter on Habit.

number which are neither to be particularly commended nor condemned. The habits of the first class are evidently to be cultivated and cherished, while those of the second class are to be abandoned. These statements are platitudes, but the teaching of James regarding the habits which are neither good nor bad is worthy of careful consideration. His contention is that such habits are to be arbitrarily changed from time to time; not that the new practices are any more hygienic or attractive than the old, but that by such deliberate changes one preserves the mastery of the situation and the adaptability of the nervous system to altered conditions which the future may bring.

It is easy to find opportunities to follow this suggestion. One may find that a certain phrase is being used repeatedly in conversation or in writing. An equivalent phrase may be substituted; this is combating the tendency to form a rigid habit. A certain melody may run in the head; the act of cutting short its continuance and causing another air to take its place or, better still, silencing the subjective music for the time is attended with an agreeable sense of being in command of the cerebral activities. James has said in substance that one should note what one is inclined to do and then do something else. This practice might conceivably be overdone, but the want of such initiative and the passive acceptance of all the minor habits as they make their appearance is the common defect.

It is not too much to claim that such self-discipline is a postponement of old age. We have said that the characteristic of the young nervous system is the ease with which paths may be opened in it. The nervous system in middle life has many well-defined paths which are employed with regularity in doing the daily work to which the subject has been trained. Changes become constantly more difficult and are made more reluctantly. Foster has said that in old age the brain holds a record of the past rather than a promise of what may be realized. Monotony of environment and consequent uniformity of reaction are factors which are calculated to bring on pre-

maturely this rigidity, which must in any event arrive at last unless death anticipates it.

The hardening of the arteries in later years is an important and widely discussed feature of the senile decline. Portending the day when "the pitcher shall be broken at the fountain or the wheel broken at the cistern," it is a material type of the invisible change in the constitution of the central gray matter which gradually limits its capacity to respond to new exactions. Much as arteriosclerosis can be postponed by temperance in eating and drinking and by a wise ordering of all the activities of life, so the loss of plasticity in the cortical organization can be delayed by the same temperate conduct with the added element of a studied variety in its employment. It seems to be much more within our power to do this than to prevent the inevitable stiffening of the crystalline lens which abolishes the accommodation for near vision at about the same period for all persons with normal eyes.

It will be gathered from what has been said that if the young nervous system excels the older one in its capacity for variation in reaction, the older one surpasses the younger in its confinement of its energies to profitable channels. It is the more economic of the two. This is much like saying that it has the greater exercise of inhibition. In it, wasteful diversions of nerve-currents to call into play effectors which serve no useful purpose have become reduced to a minimum. When a child no longer cries because matters are not altogether to its liking and, instead, seeks compensations in each situation, it has suppressed or inhibited a lower type of reaction in favor of a higher one. The progress of education always continues to be marked by such substitutions.

This inhibition of primitive reactions by others based upon complex experiences is best illustrated by the human being, but is not wholly wanting in the most intelligent of the lower animals. The dog that endures abuse at the hands of children without turning upon its tormentors

exhibits it impressively. We feel at once that we may acknowledge kinship with a creature in which we recognize the beginnings of virtue and nobility. Translated into physiologic terms, the self-control on the part of the dog stands for the existence in its brain of countercurrents which stay the execution of the simpler reflexes.

As men and women we find ourselves called upon not only to restrain many of the elementary reactions, but also to employ inhibition with reference to trains of thought. The power of concentration and the power of detachment are nearly related. It might seem that they were diametrically opposed, but a little consideration shows that what we call "concentration" depends on the banishment of irrelevant ideas, and one who can do this will, as a rule, have the ability to banish the central as well as the competing thoughts at the proper time. Those who have carried the most crushing responsibilities for long periods and rendered the greatest services to mankind, have frequently been those in whom the power of detachment from their cares was most remarkable.

Lincoln furnishes an illustrious example. Those who were near him were puzzled and sometimes offended by the abandon with which he put aside perplexing problems to enjoy humorous books or amusing plays. It was not so plain to them as it appears to us now that this relaxation was the physical and mental salvation of the heavy-laden president. Because he could dismiss the pressing questions when it was no longer profitable to dwell upon them, he could return with renewed strength and clarified judgment to his task a little later. Stedman saw the motive and wrote sympathetically of

". . . one who, longer to endure,
Called mirth to ease his ceaseless dole,
Yet kept his nobler purpose sure."

In the present period of national trial we must heed the lesson—we must not be so heavy-hearted as to give up our recreations. We need not despise ourselves or others for

having a good time, provided only that the ultimate purpose is more and better service to our generation.

The same fine attainment of mastery over the currents of the mental life has often given efficiency to those who, unlike Lincoln, have had no large endowment of physical stamina. This was doubtless the case with Darwin, who could not long pursue any single interest, but had to find something to contrast with it after a short period of attention. The quantity and the quality of the work which he produced in spite of this limitation convince us that he must have had in equal measure the power to apply himself in the most concentrated fashion and to relax with the same degree of success. The latter achievement is probably found to coexist with the ability to go quickly to sleep.

One who has cultivated the ability of turning resolutely from one line of thought to another will find abundant opportunity for the exercise of this power in effacing what is disagreeable in favor of what is pleasant. This may be true either of memories or of anticipations. The healthy mind—doubtless correlated with a healthy brain—is greatly aided by nature in banishing distressing recollections. Psychologists recognize that such an individual retains in his thought much more of detail and of vividness when the experience reviewed is pleasant than when it is the reverse. A normal person should be able to reproduce with but little diminution the feelings which attended joyous and uplifting moments, but he should find that pains and mortifications recalled from his past have atrophied to colorless abstractions. The opposite condition is particularly deplorable and may characterize the neurasthenic.

In the voluntary control of thoughts regarding the future we must recognize a matter of inestimable importance. They are happy who can systematically magnify the approaching good and disregard the impending ill, considering it only to the extent that prudence and unselfishness require. There are few examples more inspiring than those

which we owe to women who approach terrifying surgical ordeals with their attention steadfastly fixed on other concerns. We do right to pay tribute to their self-forgetfulness, but it may fairly be added that their splendid discipline is the best thing possible for the conservation of their own resources in the crisis.

Without abating anything that has been said of the virtue that is in detachment, we may point out that too easy abandoning of consecutive thinking, too frequent quests after novelty, may be weakening and vicious. Our amusements encourage such discontinuity and the national failing is strikingly illustrated by the methods of our most successful evangelist. In place of the sustained appeal there is the most rapid alternation of humor, pathos, satire, and diatribe, completely relieving the hearer of the discipline of active attention. It is suggestive of our want of application that this sort of thing should be so popular.

Much is written of the injury to general health which is wrought by fear. The teaching is not so familiar that there are many people who need to limit the extent to which certain entirely happy expectations occupy their minds. Yet this may fairly be claimed when dwelling on a distant happiness becomes a cause of discontent. The homesick college student knows that to be forever reckoning the days that remain between the present and the tardily coming vacation brings more of depression than of stimulation. It is better to emphasize the agreeable conditions which can generally be discovered close at hand.

Monotony in occupation and association must be held to threaten harm to the nervous system and so to the general health. We see the consequences in remote country districts, where each person sees but a few others, and where the round of duties to be performed is narrowly fixed from day to day and from year to year. Add to the wearing uniformity of circumstance the anxiety over the slender income and it does not seem strange that in such localities the proportion of mental derangement is high. In many a weather-beaten farmhouse there are taciturn,

desponding, and bigoted people, cherishing bitter grudges against neighbors, and making no effort to maintain sociability in the family circle. Every such man or woman is a witness to the tragic results of life without wholesome variety in contacts and interests.

A mind well stocked ought to be able to neutralize in a great measure the drawbacks of such surroundings, though it frequently appears that the man of ostensibly high education is quite dependent upon external sources of diversion. Not many college graduates could spend a winter on a poverty-stricken farm without repining, but it may be asserted that the success of an academic training may be measured by the capacity of the possessor to find contentment independently of novel stimuli. It is too much to ask that he shall prefer such isolation; formal education is naturally a preparation for further development in which the environment should bear its part. But if the exigency arises it should be possible for the trained mind to meet it with equanimity.

A store of happy memories and generous affections should be competent to provide a foil to the depressing influence of monotonous circumstances for a time at least. Few would care to be tested long. Books have been one of the chief resources of those who have contended without degenerating against the tedium and pettiness of their lot. Memorized portions of the best literature may have a share in saving intellect and character from deterioration. The silent or audible rehearsal of such passages may be more beneficial than a concert or a play. No one can estimate the steady power that has been operative in the minds of our ancestors as they have pondered the words of the Bible, "the ever-open Thesaurus" of immortal truth immortally phrased.

As we think of the means of avoiding a dead level of the mental life and the value in it of reserve capacity for inhibition, the topic of the Sabbath suggests itself. It is easy to caricature and condemn the Sunday of the Puritans. Many of the restraints which it imposed may ap-

pear arbitrary and undesirable. But certain great blessings came from it to those who cordially acquiesced in its conventions, and even in a measure to those who conformed more grudgingly. Was it not faithful Sabbath keeping which formerly made vacations seem unnecessary? It made a radical break with the routine of the other six days and it encouraged self-control rather than self-indulgence. The "Continental Sunday," toward which we seem to be moving, has too little of inhibition. The jaded nervous system, by a property which may be called perverse, demands excitement, when the real need is rest. We shall find in this fact the key to much that we have to discuss in a later chapter.

The student who refuses to let his studies encroach upon his Sunday is not likely to regret his course. He will find a zest in his work when he resumes it on Monday which is the direct consequence of the intermission. The religious prohibition of our fathers may not be well founded, but the dictates of hygiene may be made to take its place. Those who demur against the proscription of religion may urge that the assigned English literature or history is intrinsically finer than any matter likely to be substituted for it; on grounds of hygiene, however, a change is to be desired. Some experiments recently reported from the Harvard Medical School support this claim in a very positive way.¹

Daily trials were made upon a large number of students to determine their "sensory threshold," meaning in this case the least electric shock which they could feel. The stimulation was through two fingers of the same hand. When all the results were averaged, it was found that a diminution of irritability was registered from day to day as the week passed, until on Saturday the threshold reached its highest level. That is to say, it took a stronger shock to attract attention on that day than on any other. On

¹ Martin, Withington, and Putnam, American Journal of Physiology, 1014, xxviv, 97.

Monday the threshold was down again; this is the same as saying that the irritability was restored to the highest pitch. There must have been some cumulative fatigue from one day to the next which was not offset by the night's rest.

The students in this group probably had very variable programs for Sunday. But it could be said of all of them that the occupation on that day afforded a contrast with that which filled the rest of the week. Perhaps we may find in facts like these the explanation of the uniform seven-day cycle agreed upon by so many races and creeds. Experience may have shown that a longer period of routine leads to progressive impairment of efficiency, while economic pressure has not permitted the interruptions to become more frequent. Surprise has been expressed that the subjective judgment on Monday morning is apt to be that the condition is one of unusual inertia rather than of superior capacity. It is very likely true that the highest irritability does not correspond with the best state of the nervous system for consecutive work. The subject may be too easily distracted. Hence, it may very well be that the best working days will come later in the week. Still, the important fact remains that a balance must be maintained, and the seventh day, bringing change if not rest, is invaluable.

A word regarding the relation of attendance on church services to the health of the nervous system may not be out of place. If we hold to the principle that a contrast in thought and feeling is what we must seek to secure when we turn from our common, necessary interests to others which invite our attention, we shall find that much can be said in favor of the formal exercises of religion. To cease from our narrow calculations, our competitive endeavors, the struggle to please all types of associates, and to contemplate fixed and eternal realities is to alter as completely as possible the currents of mental life.

It may be said in this connection that the atmosphere of very many churches at the present time is far less favor-

able to this bitterly needed substitution than it was twenty-five years ago. When a church becomes a socio-logic forum its power to restore the jaded individual is obviously lessened. We cannot wholly regret the heroic note in current preaching, the insistent call to social service and political reform, but this is a function which is shared with the press and the secular platform, while spiritual renewal is the preëminent office of the church of Christ.

CHAPTER XIII

EMOTION

THE fact has been emphasized that a very large proportion of the action of the nervous system proceeds without clear tokens in consciousness. On the other hand, it may be urged that the general coloring of consciousness is symptomatic of much that is taking place in all departments of the neural mechanism and, indirectly, of many states of the outlying organs which we cannot attend to in an analytic fashion. Our intense feelings we speak of as emotions, and it is generally held that their development depends in a great measure upon conditions outside the cerebrum through which the fusion of effects is brought about.

The doctrine that stirring feelings never have an adequate force in the mind until there is a characteristic inflow of afferent impulses from various sources to give them positiveness is known as the James-Lange theory. According to this view a person is not truly angry until his muscles have assumed a certain tension, his heart action a certain rhythm, and his blood-vessels a certain tonic regulation. He does not realize rage until his facial expression and his posture combine to denote it. His emotion is interpreted to himself by the same signs which make it known to others. If one who feels angry can inhibit the muscular manifestations and relax his features he will experience a sense of ludicrous impotence and dissatisfaction, though he may be well aware that the occasion for his wrath retains its full validity.

So the experience of grief in its fulness requires the sensations that accompany the muscular state of one who has given way to sorrow and the tingle of shedding tears. To

know the meaning of fear, one must blanch and cower. These ideas are not readily accepted by the student who considers them for the first time; they have not proved convincing to all psychologists. But for our present purpose it does not much matter whether the bodily accompaniments of emotional states precede or follow the feeling. What concerns us is the plain fact that they attend it closely. They are, moreover, in proportion to its intensity, and it is important to realize that all *emotion is exercise* and often of a strenuous and far-reaching kind.

People who criticize athletic sports often argue somewhat in this wise: Here are 20,000 people idly viewing a contest in which 18 baseball players are taking part. The proportion of the idle to the active is more than 1000 to 1. Such a statement does but scant justice to the facts. There is an unsuspected quantity of muscular activity among the spectators as they watch the game, and they often find that they have earned a wholesome fatigue when it is ended. As they bend forward or rise in their seats, perhaps giving vent to cheers or imprecations, as they flush and tremble, now holding the breath and now gasping or sighing in the stress of their feeling, we cannot question that both the skeletal muscles and the autonomic system are being strongly played upon. It is only when the game is very one sided or the looker-on is very blasé that the hours passed in the grandstand can be classed as idle.

A previous reference has been made to the fact that in times of marked excitement the adrenal bodies are aroused to unusual activity and discharge their powerful product, adrenin, into the circulation at a more rapid rate than normal. The demonstration and the interpretation of this fact we owe to Cannon. He was able to show by a delicate test that adrenin makes its appearance in the blood of a cat when the animal has been agitated by the sight of a dog. Additional experiments by workers in the same laboratory have shown that adrenin is capable of delaying the onset of muscular fatigue. This is accomplished partly, though not wholly, by its acting as an anti-

dote to the fatigue substances at the end-plates. Under the same conditions which cause the discharge of adrenin there is likely to be a notable rise in the sugar of the blood above the usual small percentage.

The rise of the sugar may be sufficiently marked to cause some of it to pass into the urine. This feature of the emotional state has been noticed in human beings. Cannon found that such an escape of sugar occurred in most of the members of the Harvard football squad at the time of the game with Yale in 1913. This was true of the substitutes who had merely expected to be called in as well as of the active players. Moreover, the same "emotional glycosuria" was found to be common among the spectators. It is probably a rather frequent reaction; possibly the excitement of being examined for life insurance may sometimes suffice to cause it and to mislead the physician who detects sugar in the urine. In all cases it is the glycogen or animal starch in the liver which has been transformed to furnish the sugar, and it is believed that the change is brought about by the influence of adrenin in the blood.

There is a wide-spread impression that diabetes often comes in the wake of nerve-racking experiences. It is even more surely established that individuals with a tendency toward this disorder invite its full development by reckless consumption of carbohydrates. We can now see that emotional disturbances and overindulgence in sugar are similar in the effects which they produce upon the blood. Both tend to raise the percentage of the blood sugar above its normal level. Neither is likely to result in diabetes unless there is a constitutional weakness, probably of the pancreas.

Cannon has shown great insight in his explanation of these phenomena of emotion. The fundamental fact is that emotions are experienced by the lower animals and by primitive men at moments when vigorous action is to follow. Rage is the prelude to conflict. Fear will be followed by flight. Sexual passion will eventuate in sexual

aggression. Civilization complicates the order of reaction, and inhibition of the higher type represses these activities. The physical accompaniments of emotion are better suited to the ancestral than to the modern conditions. The mobilization of sugar appears to anticipate a demand for fuel on the part of the skeletal muscles. The extra adrenin at the same time promotes endurance. An increased activity on the part of the thyroid probably attends the emotional disturbance.¹ There is evidence to show that this action, like that of the adrenal, is favorable to the uttermost development of bodily resources. The effect is manifested less promptly than the other and may be important chiefly in prolonged exertion.

Very recently Cannon and his co-workers have demonstrated another and a curious change in the blood after an emotional crisis. This is a distinct reduction in the time needed for coagulation. The clotting of the blood is a defensive reaction tending to check hemorrhage and, in case of wounds, to increase the chance of survival. Cannon suggests that emotion is experienced when wounds are imminent, and so a purposive character can be discerned in this physical change as in the others.

If emotion is exercise, it may be asserted that a life poor in emotion is a life which lacks wholesome stirrings in both the neuromuscular and the autonomic realms. It is probably true that people who have had a humdrum existence are apt to be wanting in endurance. The country cousin on a visit to the city is utterly wearied by days of sight-seeing and evenings of entertainment in spite of keen enjoyment of it all. It has often been observed that volunteers from the city are more readily made into seasoned and hardy soldiers than are the more formidable looking farmers. A measure of training is inseparable from irregular hours, various associates, changes of boarding-place, and the more harmless dissipations of the city. The hurry, the noise, and the glare,

¹ Cannon, Binger, and Fitz, American Journal of Physiology, 1915, xxxvi, 363.

the very things which are held to injure the nervous system, harden it and adapt it to endure new forms of stimulation if it is intrinsically strong enough to withstand them.

At the same time it is easy to see that excess in emotion is exhausting to all the physical resources. Most people know how profound is the weariness which succeeds a severe paroxysm of anger. It is not much less marked after sudden joy or a thrilling spectacle. There seems to be much that is common to all the major emotions, though they seem well differentiated in retrospect. Cannon thinks it probable that the adrenal body is similarly involved in all of them. The feeling of weakness that comes in their wake may be due in part to a subnormal production of adrenin on the part of the exhausted cells.

Parents ought to give due weight to the fact that a child experiences emotions of maximum intensity when subjected to corporal punishment. It is pursued, captured, overpowered. Then blows are rained upon it. The psychologic experience includes, successively, terror, the anguish of helplessness against superior force, pain, humiliation, and the desolating doubt of the mother's love. Afterward, there may be reconciliation and a marked amendment of conduct, but the cost of such crises must not be underrated. Let us have them as seldom as possible.

Long ago James wrote in his always illuminating way of the use and abuse of the emotions. He made much of the idea that every emotion experienced should become a motive for conduct. If it cannot be so applied, its repetition should, so far as possible, be avoided. This teaching now appears to have much more biologic truth in its favor than it seemed to have when first published. If the occasions in the lives of animals when emotion is stirred are occasions for decisive action, we must heed the moral and not too radically break with our inheritance. If the primitive expression is out of the question, we may still be ingenious enough to find a harmless or even a profitable substitute.

Specialists are now laying all possible stress on the

connection between nervous disorders and the suppressed or unsatisfied tendencies which are believed to work harm during long periods of latency. The curbing of a wish, when this means not only the check but the annihilation of the desire, is a noble exercise of inhibition. The denial of expression simultaneously with the continued entertainment of the wish is exceedingly hurtful. The frequent experience of emotions which do not secure any motor outlet is also abnormal. Anger may not lead to fighting, nor even to scolding, but it may be turned into a motive for vigorous action. Some one has shrewdly suggested that the boy who is heartily vexed at being set to chopping wood or weeding the garden will work all the more swiftly and energetically for his irritation. If this is the actual result, and not an ill-natured dallying over the task, he will be much better off at the close than if he had sulked and idled until excused. "Emotion" and "motion" are words nearly related, and the conditions for which they stand should be related as closely.

The emotion of sympathy is one which we readily recognize as peculiarly exhausting to bear when it cannot be translated into acts. "Let us love not in word, neither in tongue, but in deed and in truth"—there is hygiene as well as humanity behind the injunction. Sympathy with suffering may in many cases subject the one who feels it to a torture more keen than that which has occasioned it. Such vicarious pain is not to be avoided altogether, but it is greatly alleviated when one finds something to do for the sufferer. How the useless torment of viewing distress is replaced in the physician by the endeavor to relieve is set forth in the exquisite story of "Rab and his Friends"—"pity, as an *emotion*, ending in itself or, at best, in tears and a long-drawn breath, lessens, while pity as a *motive* is quickened, and gains power and purpose."

It was with similar ideas that James taught that the pleasure of the drama or the symphony concert ought to find its application in the better performance of one's work or the readier expression of kindness toward one's asso-

ciates. The same may be said of the exaltation felt in the presence of beautiful natural scenes. This seems like ethical preaching, but it is none the less sound hygiene. In fact, the present age far more than any that has gone before understands the closeness of the parallel. The teaching with regard to emotion is, after all, just that of pedagogics, that it is not profitable to receive without giving back. Reaction is the law of the nervous system from first to last.

We have attempted to make the point that all emotion is exercise, and that, accordingly, emotion in moderate and reasonable variety is a source of general development; in short, of training. It will be well to show how women, far more frequently than men, are likely to suffer from the want of such stimulation. They often work by themselves and lack the spur of companionship during a large part of the day. Their friendships are seldom as warm and comforting as those between men. Many do not find time for the daily paper, and, with all its faults, the press causes its readers to visualize and in imagination to enter into the course of stirring events. The husband, who profits by the diversion of his newspaper, the little journey to and from his place of business, a more or less social occupation, and a lively lunch party at noon, should not forget how colorless by contrast has been the day of the wife at home. More deliberate effort is necessary in her case than in his to bring in the needed elements of enthusiasm and interest. It is peculiarly unfortunate that so many women are denied the full benefit of the Sabbath through being required on that day to evolve the most elaborate dinner of the week. The natural consequence of such restriction in scope for the emotional life is at first loss of ambition and later of endurance also.

A plea may be entered here for singing. We Americans are too self-conscious to enter readily into this wholesome pleasure. It would do us good to imitate the Germans and make singing a common feature of our gatherings. Even singing by one's self may be beneficial. The advantages

derived are partly those of a general neuromuscular exercise and in part connected with the very marked and agreeable emotional reaction. People who sing, though it may be quite badly, are apt to have attractive personalities. A charming old minister who set the highest value upon congregational singing once said that the Scripture was drafted to include the least gifted individuals in the injunction to "make a joyful noise unto the Lord."

Cannon has assembled many of the facts concerning emotion in a novel and suggestive form.¹ After enumerating the autonomic manifestations, so largely his own discoveries, he points out that the regional distribution of these in the topography of the nervous system is distinct and curious. The outflow of impulses accompanying the major emotions is concentrated in the thoracico-lumbar or so-called sympathetic division. This department contains the fibers which command the dilation of the pupil, the secretion of sweat, the addition of adrenin to the blood, the development of goose-flesh, acceleration of the heart, reduction of blood-flow in the digestive tract, and the inhibition of its activity. We have noted that these changes prepare an animal for exertion. Even those which seem to have a negative character—as the anemia produced in the alimentary canal—may be indirectly helpful, since they reinforce the circulation in the skeletal muscles.

Now, there are autonomic paths which start from the cranial region and which are, therefore, anterior to the sympathetic. The responses to stimulation of these paths are not familiarly recognized in the display of emotion. They include slowing of the heart, contraction of the pupils, salivation, and increased activity of the alimentary canal. They seem characteristic of periods of tranquillity rather than of excitement. Again, posterior to the sympathetic, we have the sacral autonomic. In the fibers comprised in this division are those which promote

¹ American Journal of Psychology, 1914, xxv, 256. Extended in "Bodily Changes in Pain, Hunger, Fear, and Rage," Appleton, New York, 1915.

micturition, defecation, and sexual reactions. While the bladder and the rectum may fall under the disturbing influence of emotions, their normal actions are executed in the absence of agitating conditions.

Cannon's grand generalization is, accordingly, to the effect that the thoracico-lumbar autonomic has an "emergency function," and that it is employed in crises of rage, fear, and pain to give the animal the utmost command of its resources. The activities of the other autonomic mechanisms have to be held in abeyance at such times, and are carried on only when there is no external cause of distraction. It is urged that the autonomic accompaniments of all the major emotions are too nearly identical to differentiate them, and that this fact restricts and weakens the James-Lange theory. No condensed statement can do justice to the article referred to, which should be consulted.

A manifestation of emotion which is of minor importance, but which has attracted popular attention because of its picturesque aspects, is found in certain disturbances of the electric equilibrium of the body.¹ It is probably fair to claim that all physiologic processes are attended by quick shifting of potential. These changes have been extensively studied in nerves, in muscles (including the heart), and in glands. They are of small magnitude and must be registered by delicate instruments. If the two hands are plunged into cups of salt solution which are connected through a sufficiently sensitive galvanometer, there will be evidence of electric instability. The rhythm of the heart-beat will be reproduced by oscillations of the indicator. Voluntary muscle contractions will displace it.

Now, if a series of words is spoken in the presence of the man whose hands are in circuit with the galvanometer, it is likely that at least a small excursion will follow each word. But some words will have much more power than others to give direction to his thoughts and to arouse his

¹ Wells and Forbes, Archives of Psychology, New York, March, 1911.

feelings. The swing of the galvanometer will faithfully demonstrate the degree of the emotional response. Thus, if names of girls are repeated, the subject of the inquisitorial experiment may react to each stimulus by an appreciable sign, but he will pay tribute to the name of his fiancée by a striking movement of the recorder. These electric disturbances are not surely localized, but they testify to the involvement of contractile or secreting structures—perhaps of both—in the phenomena of emotion.

CHAPTER XIV

SLEEP

ABOUT one-third of an average human life is passed in the familiar and yet mysterious state which we call sleep. From one point of view this seems a large inroad upon the period in which our consciousness has its exercise: a subtraction of twenty-five years from the life of one who lives to be seventy-five. Yet we know that the efficiency and comfort of the individual demand the surrender of all this precious time. It has often been said that sleep is a more imperative necessity than food, and the claim seems to be well founded.

The writer once asked a psychologist how he would define sleep, and received the answer, "Why, it is nothing at all." It has been simply described as *inattention*. Both these characterizations turn upon the idea that sleep is a suspension of consciousness and ignore its physiologic features. Our own judgment as to whether we have been asleep or not is evidently based upon the same conception. If this is the whole story, no animal can be said to sleep unless we grant that it is conscious at other times. We readily recognize that sleep is more clearly a part of the lives of the higher animals than of those below them in the scale, but it is hard to set limits to its occurrence. All mammals and birds are assumed to sleep; probably the reptiles do, but we do not feel so sure about the frog or the fish.

It might be more rational to reverse the order of inquiry and, instead of asking how far down in the scale there is sleep, we might ask, at what level, as we ascend the scale, do we find animals awake? Is not all life, below a certain stratum, somnambulistic? An idea much like this has

been expressed by Thomson. It is, briefly, as follows: Sleep becomes necessary at the same stage in development where there is the earliest entertainment of conscious purposes. Animals which are never actuated by such purposes will not overdo. Their metabolism, their waste, and repair will go on in a fairly even manner, each output of energy being followed by a prompt subsidence of activity to permit recuperation. But as soon as there is any germ of will, any interest in the pursuit of an object, the organism will be spurred on until the compensatory change has to be of a profound and long-continued kind, and, moreover, has to abolish the entertainment of the conscious purpose while it is in progress.

We say of a baby that it sleeps nearly all the time. We might equally well say that its power to keep awake is undeveloped. Its sleep is a continuation of its state before birth when it was shielded from most stimuli. What it has yet to gain is the superior state of waking, one which is maintained at first by stimulation and only later by trains of thought originated in experience.

While we cannot help emphasizing the relation of sleep to consciousness, and, therefore, on the physiologic side, to the cerebrum, we are obliged to concede that other parts of the nervous system are involved. This is plain from the fact that decerebrate birds and mammals still exhibit an alternation of two conditions which have the outward aspect of sleeping and waking. The periodic depression is not confined to the cortex, though a slight change in the chemical condition of the cerebral gray matter would seem to be sufficient to produce the purely psychic experience of going to sleep.

Whatever may be the essential condition of sleep, it is favored by the cessation of external stimulation and postponed by the action of such disturbances. It is probably for this reason that most animals are disposed to sleep at night. This will most surely be the case with those which receive a large share of their guiding impressions through the eye. Normal man falls in this class. His eyes

are his most important receptors, but because of his command of artificial lighting he is not compelled to submit tamely to the suggestion that he go to sleep at sundown. He has developed a curious habit of being active far into the night and sleeping far into the day, at least in the spring and summer of the temperate zone. This tendency may suggest a whimsical citation of the first law of mechanics: "A body in motion continues in motion, a body at rest continues at rest, unless acted on by an external force."

The purposes served by sleep are plain. It is a state in which the local and general losses of the tissues, which have not been fully met as they have taken place, can be offset. Bodily rest without sleep gives an opportunity for such repair in the skeletal muscles, but not necessarily in the receptor system, and certainly not in the cerebrum. Even the skeletal muscles are probably better rested in sleep than they can be otherwise, for their relaxation is more complete. As to the autonomic mechanisms, it is harder to determine how far they are granted a remission of activity during sleep. We have to bear in mind the fact that many of the autonomic influences are inhibitory in character, and the interruption of such currents would lead to an actual increase of activity in the organs reached by the nerve-fibers. No case of this kind is certainly known, but the principle helps us to understand how there may be no interference with digestion while an animal is sleeping, as it is likely to after eating heavily. Carlson's¹ observations upon himself show that the hunger contractions of the stomach continue with full intensity during sleep.

Many theories have been advanced to account for the passage from the waking to the sleeping state. It will be helpful to consider what conditions other than sleep commonly suspend consciousness. Two suggest themselves, the one mechanical and the other chemical. One is inter-

¹ Carlson, "The Control of Hunger in Health and Disease," University of Chicago Press, 1916.

ference with the circulation in the brain, and the second is anesthesia by drugs carried through the medium of the blood. Though we may call the first a mechanical cause of unconsciousness, it is, doubtless, a chemical one at bottom, for lack of blood-supply must lead to chemical alterations in the neurons. Fainting is an instance of this action. The other type of influence may be illustrated by ether or chloroform narcosis, as well as by the coma of diabetes, where the acidity of the blood is the source of trouble. Normal sleep has sometimes been thought of as a swooning and sometimes as an anesthesia. When the former cause is assumed, we have an *anemia* theory; the alternative is a theory of *toxemia*.

The nightly experience of falling asleep does not very distinctly suggest fainting. But when the drowsiness is unusually compelling and unwelcome, as when one nods in church, the resemblance does not appear so remote. The rapidity of the passage from clear consciousness to the realm of dreams or to oblivion favors the belief that a mechanical factor has operated to determine it. The most natural assumption is that a vasomotor change has taken place. Howell¹ has pointed out that such a change may be due to fatigue of the vasomotor center. During our waking hours this part of the autonomic system is required to respond to frequent and varying demands. Some of its duties have been indicated in an earlier chapter.

If the center is really subject to fatigue, we may suppose that it eventually becomes difficult to stimulate it sufficiently to maintain the normal arterial tone. If it lapses from its average condition, the blood-pressure will decline and the flow will proceed more slowly through the widened vessels. In the brain, encased as it is in a rigidly walled enclosure, the slow flow will be in vessels which cannot materially widen. Hence, the brain supply will be reduced and the maintenance of its activities

¹ "Text-book of Physiology," Sixth Edition, W. B. Saunders Co., Philadelphia, 1915.

threatened. It remains possible in any ordinary case to spur the center to renewed action, to raise the general pressure, and so to drive the blood once more with an adequate velocity through the capillaries of the brain.

Drowsiness is the subjective sign of the slowing circulation in the cerebrum. In fighting it off one resorts instinctively to the employment of external stimulation. This is the object attained by taking a slightly uncomfortable position, by raising one's eyes to the light, and by moving parts of the body. The exclusion of stimuli, conversely, favors the relaxation of the vascular system. When we court sleep we seek quiet and darkness. By lying down we reduce to a minimum the inflowing impulses from muscles, tendons, and joints. We avoid extremes of temperature. We interrupt, so far as we may, the more vivid trains of thought. Thus, in favorable cases, we withdraw from the vasomotor center the nerve-currents which prompt it to react upon the blood-vessels, and we are rewarded by a welcome change in the character of our consciousness, if not by its actual suspension.

The fact that one can be awakened at any time by stimuli supports the theory that the immediate cause of sleep is the slackening of the blood-flow through the brain. A state of general poisoning could not be done away with on the instant by the stimulation of afferent paths. Nevertheless, the acceptance of the vasomotor hypothesis leaves a place for the toxemia theories. It is the accumulation of chemical compounds, fatigue substances, in the body fluids and perhaps in the protoplasm itself that leads up to the central failure. We have, therefore, to distinguish between the cause of the *approach* of sleep, which is metabolic, and that of its *onset*, which is mechanical. It seems to be the distribution of the fatigue substances rather than their actual amount which makes sleep a pressing necessity. We know that we may be very tired and find sleep impossible.

When the ties between the outer world and the individual consciousness are severed as one sinks to sleep

there is an interesting and fairly definite order in the process. Muscular control is lost before sensation; there is an interval of delicious relaxation of which one is pleasantly aware. Shortly the cutaneous sensibility is gone, while the knowledge of the position of the extremities lingers for a little. Under such circumstances one still realizes the posture, but not the contact with the bed. If one is falling asleep with folded hands, there may be a stage in which the position of the hands is still apparent while they no longer seem to touch. Havelock Ellis¹ has suggested that this apparent absence of any support may be explained by the dreaming consciousness as the experience of floating in space or of falling, two very common impressions. Hearing is the latest means of communication between the world without and the isolated mind. It is likewise the first channel to be reopened as one is roused or wakes gradually from sleep.

The depth of sleep at different times in the course of the night has often been tested. In the trials most frequently referred to, the measurement was based on the loudness of the sound necessary to awaken the sleeper. All observers have agreed that the deepest sleep, as indicated by such methods, comes quite early, probably within the second hour, if not the first. We know that if we are awakened within this period the experience is one of violent subjective and bodily disturbance. The nervous shock is such as to make it hard to compose one's self again. It is a very different matter to be aroused from the later and shallower sleep; then the response to a call is easily obtained, but, unhappily, it is correspondingly easy to sink back to sleep.

After the first deep sleep there is a shoaling which is about as rapid as the previous subsidence into the depths. Within three hours of the beginning a condition is reached in which there is marked sensitiveness to stimulation. Opinions differ as regards the later behavior of the nervous

¹ "The World of Dreams," Houghton, Mifflin & Co., Boston, 1911.

system. According to one set of data there is a gradual and progressive reduction of the depth of sleep during the three or four additional hours of its continuance. Others have noted a second deepening toward morning. This last description appears to fit in with a great deal of individual experience; a wakeful time may be passed through about 5 o'clock, and it may be harder to get up two hours later than it would have been at dawn. A German writer, accepting the double-peaked curve as normal, has referred it to the impression made upon the centers when the infant woke once each night to be fed. Little children who no longer wake at this time are apt to show a restless interval between two periods of heavy slumber.

Why do we wake? Often, of course, because of external stimuli. Some sound or other shock, too slight to disturb the early sleep, breaks over the lowered threshold. Internal changes, such as the filling of the bladder, may operate in the same way. But, many times, the brain itself seems to determine the waking, terminating sleep very near the time fixed upon the night before. One who has set an alarm clock may have the experience of waking suddenly and having but a few minutes to wait for the bell. A nervous mechanism was "set" for the same hour as the clock.

On any theory we should expect to find, as in fact we do, that the greatest depth of sleep would be soon reached and passed. There should be a steady gain in the direction of the sweeping away of fatigue substances and a steady improvement in the capacity for reaction, which is what we measure when we induce waking. It does not follow that the time passed in shallow sleep can be much shortened without detriment. The experiments cited show only that certain mechanisms require less than three hours to regain almost their full irritability; there are many more which may need a longer exemption from the demands of the waking state.

The vasomotor changes which mark the coming on of

sleep and its departure have been demonstrated in the normal human being by an indirect, but sensitive, method.

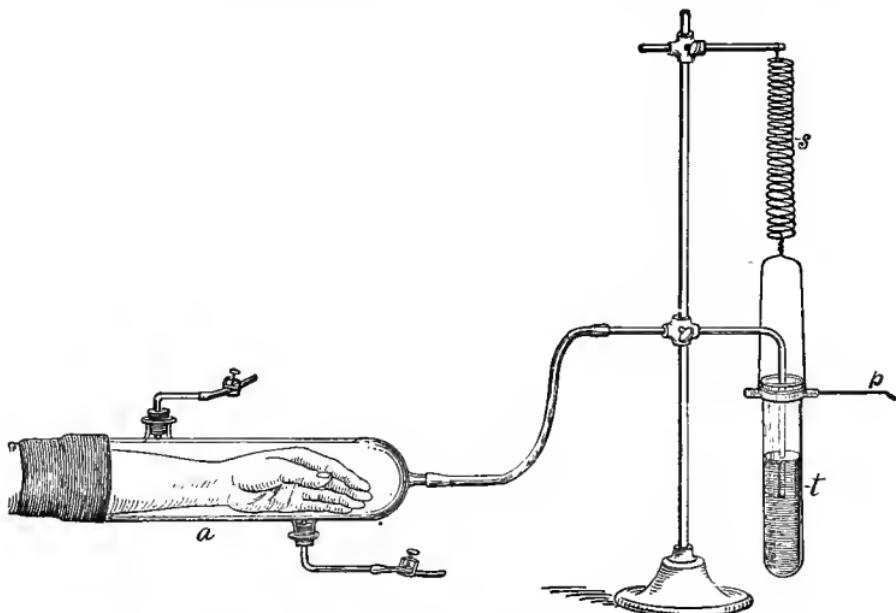


Fig. 25.—A schematic diagram of Mosso's plethysmograph for the arms: *a*, The glass cylinder for the arm, with rubber sleeve and two tubulations for filling with warm water; *s*, the spiral spring swinging the test-tube, *t*. The spring is so calibrated that the level of the liquid in the test-tube above the arm remains unchanged as the tube is filled and emptied. The movements of the tube are recorded on a drum by the writing point, *p*. (Howell:)

This is the use of the instrument known as the plethysmograph (Fig. 25), which, in its usual form, is a glass cylinder designed to accommodate the hand and forearm of the subject. A tight but comfortable closure at the end toward the elbow is secured and the whole is filled with water. A delicate gage is connected with the interior and any displacement or drawing back of water is made evident. A displacement must mean an increase in the volume of the arm and hand, a withdrawal must indicate a shrinkage. Such changes in volume, when they occur at all rapidly, may be ascribed to changes in the amount

of blood in the part. More gradual changes might be due to variations in the quantity of the lymph.

When a person schools himself to go to sleep with his arm enclosed in a plethysmograph it is found that a marked dilation of the member occurs at about the time when the threshold is crossed. This testifies to a diminution of the tonic activity of the vasoconstrictor center. It has already been pointed out that such a slackening will result in a more sluggish cranial circulation. Hence it is inferred that when the record from the plethysmograph shows a widening of the vessels in the arm there is a simultaneous flagging of the blood-supply to the brain. When waking occurs there is a sharp contraction of the arm. It is very significant that external stimuli applied during sleep, but not sufficing to rouse the sleeper, nevertheless cause vasomotor responses. In the experiments directed by Howell, he himself being the subject, the watcher at the bedside saw that occasional noises and vibrations interrupting the quiet of the night registered themselves through the distinct narrowing of the vessels of the arm which they called forth. The reaction might be described as a threat of waking.

This observation makes it reasonable to assume that even when a man has schooled himself to sleep in the midst of disturbing conditions his rest is not ideal. If he lives beside an elevated road it must be supposed that the passing of every train produces a stirring of his nervous mechanisms which might have been avoided and which must lessen the benefit secured through his sleep.

On the side of hygiene there is much to be said of sleep. Questions frequently asked and not at all easy to answer are: How much sleep is best and how far do individuals differ in their requirement? How can one know whether enough sleep is taken? Is it possible to sleep too much? All these are related questions and all are important, but intelligent people will be likely to answer them in very different ways. We may attempt to deal with the last one first, and we will venture the assertion that it *is* possible

to sleep more than is best. The fact that it is found difficult to get up in the morning is by no means a sure sign that more sleep should be taken. It may be only a sign of laziness. It is better to be guided by the evening feeling and particularly by the demand of the eyes for a release from their task.

The disciples of Horace Fletcher claim that one of the benefits realized when a low diet has been adopted is found in the fact that the hours of sleep may be shortened without making inroads upon health. The obvious suggestion is that a part of the sleep of average men is a coma, an avoidable intoxication, due to an excess of narcotizing substances absorbed from the burdened intestine. Whether this is a typic condition or not, it is probably exemplified by some heavy eaters. The picture of the carnivorous animal gorged with concentrated food and crawling away for a long sleep is familiar enough. Many young men and women who supposed that certain hours of sleep were necessary to their efficiency, have discovered, after marriage and the coming of children, that they are capable of much more work with much less sleep than they formerly believed.

With advancing age the need for sleep seems generally to diminish. In the Preacher's classic description the old person is said to "rise up at the voice of the bird." Many readers will recall the uneasy habits of the aged, who cannot lie peaceably in bed until the younger members of the family consider it time to get up, but are found bustling feebly about imaginary duties in the early hours of the morning. The nervous system in which the decomposition processes have become lessened in intensity has less need of the compensatory state.

Is there any scientific basis for the old teaching, "Early to bed and early to rise"? It would seem at first as though sleep at one time should have as much virtue as at another. Still the ancient maxim may have a certain foundation. To be up early and to go "early to bed" means that the use of artificial light will be reduced to a

minimum. It is not likely that any substitute for daylight can be found which will not impose a severer tax upon the eyes than does their natural form of stimulation. Whatever tires the eyes has a widespread and depressing influence upon the whole nervous system. Again, lying abed late in the morning has the disadvantage that the sleeper is likely to be affected by light and noises which may deprive his rest of some of its potency for good, even though they do not interrupt it.

Insomnia.—Loss of sleep may be a serious matter whether it is due to shortened hours in bed or to the inability to sleep at the proper time. But it is doubtless true that those who complain of insomnia sleep more than they suppose. Fitful sleep is more common than sleeplessness. The clock may be heard striking every hour of the night, but it may be that this is because the sound has interrupted a shallow sleep.

To get to sleep one must evidently find comfort for body and mind. The room and the bed, temperature, and ventilation are to be right. Cool air to breathe, warmth of the body and extremities, a little something in the stomach—these are desirable. Muscular relaxation may call for some self-discipline; it is a trifling but suggestive fact that extension of the fingers when they are noticed to be flexed is a help toward sleep. So, also, is slow breathing—an attempt to imitate the respiration of a sleeper.

Mental preparation for sleep should mean, first of all, the inhibition of the fear of wakefulness. It should further involve the substitution of indifferent thoughts for those of acute interest. Reading over a somewhat familiar selection, which no longer piques attention, but declines into a soothing music, favors this result. The attitude of passivity in the presence of one's own thoughts makes one a dreamer by a very gentle transition.

Neuron Theories of Sleep.—We have regarded sleep as a state induced indirectly by fatigue substances acting upon the system and directly by the failure of an adequate cerebral circulation. Other aspects of the condition may

be selected for emphasis. All the facts of sleep might be explained by the conception of varying synaptic resistance. The establishing of gaps in the motor paths would remove the muscles from central control. Similar gaps anywhere along the paths which conduct impulses from the receptors would cause sensory paralysis for the time. Thought, in the absence of the means of present guidance from the external world and deprived of the power to express itself through the neuromuscular mechanism, must be limited to a rehearsal of memories and should take on the character of dreaming. We should expect that a further impairment of intercourse among the various regions of the cerebrum must suspend even this kind of psychic activity.

Reasoning along the lines just indicated, certain physiologists have pictured the passage from waking to sleeping as due to the interposition of extra resistance at the synapses. The idea was first expressed as a literal snapping of connections between the discharging and receptive processes of the neurons, but this has come to seem highly improbable. Still, the conception has a symbolic if not a literal value. We have seen in our general discussion of fatigue that the synapses may be regarded as links of low endurance, and this makes it reasonable to give them a place in our hypotheses of sleep.

It is curious to find that the idea that the junctions of the neurons may, in some sense, open and close has been used in two lines of speculation of a distinctly contrasted character. According to the more familiar view—already outlined—it is the breaking apart of the nervous units which paralyzes objective and subjective activity. Another theory, originating in Italy and not widely known here, makes precisely the contrary assumption, that sleep is the accompaniment of an extensive commingling of cell processes. The establishment of new connections between the neurons might explain the confusion and irrational combinations occurring in dreams. The general failure of reactions and, finally, of consciousness itself might be explained as due to a dissipation of the nerve-

currents in so many paths that there should nowhere be any effective intensity. Waking, then, might be pictured as the *resumption* of intercourse among the neurons, or as the *restriction* of intercourse to the usual serviceable channels after a period of disorderly diffusion.

A mill is usually stopped by closing the gates and interrupting the stream that has been turning its wheels, but it could be stopped by opening sluices in the dam and diverting a large share of the water. The two possibilities correspond roughly with the neuron theories of sleep. Either a cessation or a scattering of impulses within the brain may conceivably result in unconsciousness. The second theory is better adapted to an explanation of dreams, a matter to which we must now turn.

Reference: Pieron, "Le Probleme Physiologique du Sommeil," Masson et Cie, Paris, 1913.

CHAPTER XV

DREAMS

Most people, even though they may be much interested in the achievements of science, will probably be found quite skeptical concerning the idea that dreams are worthy of any serious notice. In common judgment it is a weakness to think or talk much about the strange scenes we witness in sleep. This feeling is probably the result of emancipation from the superstitious faith in the revealing virtue of dreams which was once universal. Tawdry books, purporting to give a basis for the interpretation of dreams and attaching an occult significance to every common object seen by the dreamer, are still circulated. However fanciful these publications may be, their purpose is not wholly unlike that of a rapidly increasing mass of sober scientific writing.

Our sleep compares with our waking somewhat as the night compares with the day. In absolute darkness we see nothing of the outside world. But we are more familiar with relative than with utter darkness. If a little light is furnished we see objects dimly and interpret their nature in imaginative ways. Often our sleep does not extinguish but only obscures the scenery in the field of attention. Our judgments become ludicrously wrong. Yet the stars, invisible by day, shine forth at night, and in dreams remote memories, hidden beyond recovery when the special sensations are in full waking intensity, come before us for review.

We cannot follow this subject far, but it would be unwise to omit all reference to dreaming, for it is fruitful of suggestions concerning hygiene. One of the most obvious has to do with the general content of the dream. Have-lock Ellis¹ classifies dreams as follows: (1) There are those

¹ "The World of Dreams," Houghton, Mifflin & Co., Boston, 1911.

which are determined by the bodily conditions existing at the moment; these may be called somatic, presentative dreams. (2) There are those which are shaped by stimuli acting from without; they may be called external, presentative dreams. Other dreams are not clearly related to present circumstances, but are mosaics of memories. Ellis calls such dreams *representative* and subdivides them into two classes, the recent and the remote. It is a matter of moment whether one's memory dreams are of the recent or the remote kind.

A man who is happy and not overtired, who is meeting his obligations with reasonable ease and success, is likely, when he goes to sleep, to encounter persons and scenes quite other than those he has lately known. Unexpectedness is the foremost quality of his dreaming experiences. If he is skilled in unravelling the composition when he reviews it after waking, he may be able to detect many of the sources and to convince himself that they belong to relatively distant periods in his career. It will usually be his impression that he has not been thinking at all of the matters which have been brought before him in his dreams.

If he is seriously tired, anxious, and overwrought, he may be compelled to attend to visions of an entirely different class. Such a man may continue, in dreams, to pursue the interests of his daily life. The same problems which he had to face when waking confront him in his sleep. The chess-player who has finished a hard game shortly before going to bed may find the board again set before him and be forced to consider the possible results of each move through a long series. When he rouses himself he feels that he has not rested well. In the same way one in grief or fear may still entertain these feelings and ponder their causes while he sleeps. Now, all dreaming is partial insomnia, but there can be no question that it is better to be awake to novel and diverting thoughts than to find no release from the pressing concerns of one's routine existence. "Recent representative" dreams clearly consti-

tute an unprofitable overtime performance on the part of some of the brain mechanisms.

The statement just made suggests that it may not be wholly whimsical to claim that dreams of the other (remote) order afford some of the elements of a vacation. The body does not find the same wholesome change of environment and exercise as though an actual outing were taken, but the purely mental content may be much the same. Dreams may be at least as beneficial as a moving-picture show, which, in fact, they greatly resemble. So long as they have the unexpected character, their occurrence does not seem to indicate that there is any failure to recuperate the powers of those nerve-complexes on which the strain of the ensuing day must fall. It may be asserted that dreamless sleep is the ideal, but we do not know surely that it is ever realized. People who say they never dream, more probably dream and forget. We know how uncertain at best is our recollection of most dreams. The impressions seem to be destroyed by the strong light of day as though they were images upon a photographic plate. Much as we have to develop our negatives in rooms dimly lighted by selected rays, we have to rehearse our dreams in the half-waking condition at dawn if we are to make them our permanent possession. This does not imply want of vividness in dreams when they are first experienced; Ellis is apparently justified in his striking aphorism: "Dreams are real while they last; can we say more of life?"

The writer once had occasion to discover how completely a lapse of memory may create the impression that there has been unconsciousness. Nitrous oxid had been given for the extraction of two teeth. When he came to himself he told the dentist that he was much gratified by the entire success of the anesthesia. He left the office with the same feeling of satisfaction. On the street a few minutes later he recalled with appalling distinctness the pain of the second extraction. No impression of the first operation ever returned. It is disquieting to think that

one may suffer severely and then report in good faith that one did not, but it is the same with dreaming.

The subject matter of dreams may be of considerable assistance in answering a very important question. A person who wakes day after day with feelings of weariness and incapacity may be either indolent or tired. It is likely that the sensations are much the same in the two cases, and yet it is necessary that the two conditions shall be distinguished. Clearly enough, mischief will be done if one who is really fatigued and in need of more rest mercilessly condemns himself for laziness and redoubles his efforts to overcome the inertia. On the other hand, a man who is actually lazy and failing to make the most of himself may be led into habits of self-pity and self-indulgence by concluding that he is seriously tired. When face to face with this problem it is well to ask whether the dreams have been mostly of the recent or the remote type. If they have been filled with the cares of the day, there is good ground for assuming that cumulative nervous fatigue is developing. If they are recalled as fantastic, varied, and curious, the conclusion may be less welcome, but also less ominous.

As to dreams of the "presentative type"—those in which immediate circumstances connected with the body itself and sources of stimulation close at hand are concerned—the most interesting facts established are those with regard to symbolic depiction of the causative conditions. It is quite plain that the dreaming mind usually refers all its experiences to external affairs. It gives them an objective existence. Suppose, for example, that a man has an uncomfortably palpitating heart. When he is awake he is in no doubt of the actual nature of the case, but when he falls asleep and dreams, it is not to feel that his heart is rapid and irregular, but to view some scene suggestive of difficult action, it may be a horse struggling to draw a load up a hill or a laborer grappling with a heavy stone. The writer once lay thinking of the physiologic action of the heart as sleep drew near, and when the

border-line was crossed he saw at once a huge pulley-block. It was so good a symbol of a weight-raising device that he awoke with lively gratification.

According to the same principle, the victim of indigestion does not think while he dreams that he is suffering, but he becomes a witness of some spectacle of violence or horror. Dreams referable to distention of the bladder symbolize the real trouble in naïve and amusing ways. One who was in such a case thought that he turned on a faucet which did not run. The trivial dream perfectly figured the need that existed and the desirable inhibition that postponed its satisfaction, but the facts were made to appear as external to the dreamer's person. Thus we are constantly detaching portions of the self and treating them as separate objects of attention. Ellis has discerningly pointed out that this tendency is not entirely absent from the waking mind and that it may become a conspicuous one at times. This is particularly true when the temperament verges toward the neurasthenic.

The unfortunate person who is mentally depressed is prone to charge upon others the faults which are his own. When he is quick tempered, he is convinced that they are impatient. Precisely as the dreamer does, he fails to recognize that the matter which offends and outrages him is part of himself. If he feels better for a while, he concludes that his housemates have become more thoughtful and kind. It is harder for him to recognize his own responsibility than it is for any of us to realize that the rising and setting of the sun are illusions due to the movement of our planet. It may be added that it is even more important to conquer the tendency to self-deception in the first instance than in the second. The man who can make the correct allowance for his own ups and downs while he sits in judgment on others best deserves to be considered *awake*.

We are told by certain writers of the present time that dreams are reliable sources of information for the specialist regarding many facts of personal history and exist-

ing tendencies which the patient would prefer to hide. Dreams form a large share of the material used for diagnosis by the psychanalysts.¹ It would be presumptuous for a lay writer to criticize their principles, which have often been justified by the success of their work. Nevertheless, it may be said that one who reads their expositions without special training is likely to conclude that psychanalysis is the art of putting the worst possible construction upon all that the subject thinks or dreams.

According to Freud and his school, sexual impulses are determinative in the shaping of most dreams. In the troubled consciousness of the dreamer there are present at once the current of desire and the sense of the restraint which is habitually imposed upon it. Both are disguised almost beyond recognition, for the dreaming mind is curiously disingenuous and indirect. The concealment is so effectual that the average reader does not readily accept the interpretations placed upon the dream imagery by the modern successors of Joseph and Daniel. It seems as though people of an introspective turn might do themselves serious injustice by applying too rigorously the Freudian ideas to self-examination.

For such there are certain consoling considerations. First of all, it may be stated that the relation between the waking and the dreaming life of a man who is approximately normal is one of contrast rather than one of resemblance. Therefore, if a man seems to display a tendency to cowardice, frivolity, deceit, or sensuality in his dreams, it may be because these evil traits have been decisively subordinated in his waking hours to their very opposites. It is only when the will is in abeyance that they can be brought to the fore. It is the best of us that goes to sleep most soundly, and if there is a shocking deficiency in generosity and renunciation in the apparent character of the dreamer, it may be that the instruments of these

¹ Brill, "Psychanalysis," W. B. Saunders Co., Philadelphia, 1912. Freud, "The Interpretation of Dreams," Brill, translator, Macmillan, New York, 1915.

faculties are plunged into a narcosis which is the sign of their continuous exercise during the day. It is reasonable to suppose that in health the parts of the complex mechanism which are most employed while one is awake will be most profoundly restrained from action when sleep has come.

For similar reasons it is unjust to conclude from the unworthy impulses of a man in delirium that his previous life has been one of hypocrisy and duplicity. It may well be that he has been master of the situation until his fine powers have been temporarily dissipated. We must bear in mind that virtue does not consist in the inability to conceive of misconduct, but rather in the strength to refrain from it and to "overcome evil with good." This is eminently true of the sexual life, and, even if the claims of Freud are fully accepted, it does not follow that men need lose self-respect or become cynical regarding the high principles by which the lives of their associates are governed.

One of the determining forces in dreams is the justification of one's own conduct. When one "has it on his mind" to wake and get up in good season dreams may come which may offer excuses for continued repose. The writer once dreamed in the morning that he attempted to look at his watch. Instead of consulting the time-piece he picked up a penny and reading the date 1856, said to himself, "That is early," and relaxed in great contentment. (This was all a dream involving no action.)

We have quoted the statement that sleep is inattention. By contrast, the state of complete waking may be regarded as one of attention, and, more precisely, of attention of the active order. Psychologists distinguish active from passive attention, the former requiring the voluntary selection of its objects and the removal of their competitors by a process of inhibition. Passive attention is that which is involuntarily yielded to stimuli which we are unable to ignore. This is clearly the case when we dream; we are not able to follow up the features of the dream which in-

terest us, but are compelled to shift our thought to others which, in turn, elude our scrutiny. Ellis has said that dreams have always the character of dissolving views. Objects which excite our curiosity persist in fading away and becoming overlaid by new ones seemingly unrelated to the first.

We have spoken chiefly of the part played in dreams by memories and bodily conditions. The special sense organs doubtless bear their part. This is true even of the eyes, which are sources of vague sensation even when closed. It is believed by many, including Bergson,¹ that the glimmering effect which anyone may notice on shutting the eyes is quite influential in suggesting the scenery of dreams. It may be thought a very limited source for such elaborate phenomena, but, as Bergson points out, it is our habit when awake to fill in the details of what we see in scant outline. Dreams influenced by sounds are rather common, and serve to raise interesting questions as to whether we recall our dreams as they actually occurred or arrange their contents in a new order. To use an illustration from Ellis: A man dreams that he enlists in the army, goes to the front, and is shot. He is awakened by the slamming of a door. It seems probable that the enlistment and the march to the field are theories to account for the report which really caused the whole train of thought, though it seemed to be its latest item.

A dentist made the following experiment twice with the same results: While a patient was inhaling nitrous oxid the names of the stations on a local railroad line were repeated to him. When consciousness returned he was asked what he had dreamed. In each case the reply was, "I thought that I went on a long railroad journey and at last met with a terrible accident." One cannot doubt that the catastrophe was the dreamer's interpretation of the violent extraction of a tooth.

The dreaming state is one which usually has little or no motor expression. Ellis has called attention to the fact

¹ Bergson, "Dreams," Holt, New York, 1915.

that in dreams we may either think that we move with extraordinary ease and speed, or we may have the sense of inability to command the muscles. Of course, the second state is one in which we have a more correct impression of the actual situation. The author cited thinks that it is always associated with shallow sleep when there are sensory signs of the immobility of the limbs. With deeper sleep these signs would disappear and the dreamer would not be deterred from imagining remarkable indulgences in locomotion and aviation.

The lack of brightness in the ocular sensations possible to one with closed eyes may account for the report commonly made that dream scenery is colorless and sober. This is not necessarily the case; the writer often experiences surprise and pleasure when, after a winter day, he finds that in his dream country the grass is brilliantly green, the sky intensely blue, and the sunshine as golden as that of a Sorolla landscape. It is generally agreed that sensations of taste and smell are rarely noted in dreams.

CHAPTER XVI

CAUSES OF NERVOUS IMPAIRMENT

WHEN we look into the faces of men and women as we meet them on the street-cars we are painfully impressed with the widespread prevalence of ill health. The average expression is not one of comfort, hope, and good-will, but of depression, anxiety, and absorption in self. The exceptional face which is radiant of strength and benevolence is conspicuous in the dreary succession. The temptation is to pass a harsh judgment upon those who seem so unhappy and unfriendly and to condemn them for not being otherwise. Reflection convinces one that this is unjust. They are the victims of heredity, of malnutrition, of poverty, and, not seldom, of voluntary sacrifices. It is not for the casual spectator to say how far they are suffering from personal dereliction which should have been avoided. Whatever the past facts have been, the present difficulty with most of these people is imperfection of nervous equipment.

A considerable share of this may be charged to neurotic inheritance. Every one can think of families in which nervous instability is exemplified in various forms by the different members. These are the families which are given to quarreling and recrimination at home, but unite with even greater pugnacity against the outsider who has incurred their displeasure. They make themselves miserable, but seem unable to help it. Where the taint is graver, there is downright neurasthenia. From such stock come certain individuals with marked talent, but hampered by self-consciousness and excessive sensitiveness. The temperament is not a modern development, as commonly assumed, but as old as the time of Plato,

who is said to have described it with great precision and to have declared such persons to be "undesirable citizens" for his republic.

But the proportion of people who fall far below the normal in courage and perseverance, in kindness and contentment is too large to allow us to say of every case that the inheritance was much to blame. We must pass on to the circumstances affecting the individual. These may be divided into those which are strictly physical and those which can be described as unfortunate mental habits. Among the physical factors are some which are bodily and some which are environmental.

We may conveniently mention first disturbances of nutrition. The opinion is commonly held that many powerful personalities have been perverted by dyspepsia. This is said, for example, of Carlyle. Of course, it is hard in such instances to say which is cause and which is effect. The indigestion may be the result of the inefficiency of a nervous system in which pessimism is a congenital characteristic. This is a difficulty of interpretation which we constantly encounter in all discussions of this kind. But whether despondency and cynicism are primary or secondary, there is no reasonable doubt that when they are once established they continue to impair the digestive capacity, and the alimentary trouble tends to intensify the nervous deficiency. Thus, we have an illustration of what is known to physicians as a "vicious cycle."

The reaction of a disordered stomach and intestine upon the brain is not solely by means of nerve-impulses such as result in general sensation. It is now believed that the influence exerted is largely due to chemical products originating in abnormal fermentation processes in the canal. Entering the blood, these deleterious compounds are borne to all parts of the body, but they have an especially marked effect upon the central nervous system. The condition in which these poisons are circulated and become productive of mischief is spoken of as auto-intoxication. It is favored by overeating, especially

of nitrogenous foods (meats, eggs, and legumes). But it may develop also when the diet is scanty, for it has become clear in recent times that underfeeding may so enfeeble the reactions of the organs of digestion that they do not care for the food so well as they would for a larger and more stimulating ration.

Auto-intoxication is frequently associated with anemia, and this condition—a diminution of the oxygen-carrying substance in the blood—always threatens injury to the nervous system. It implies limited endurance in every pursuit. Just how the anemia of auto-intoxication is caused is not always plain. In some cases it is probably due to the continuous formation in the intestine of a poison which is destructive to the red corpuscles.

Among the bodily sources of nervous damage we do well to emphasize eye-strain. Attention has already been called to the primacy of the eye among the receptors through which the organism is stimulated. It follows that excessive use of the eyes or their employment under difficulties must be harmful in a high degree. A little space may be here devoted to a comparison of the common visual defects as causes of central trouble. The normal eye may be abused—as by reading with poor light or in situations where there is vibration (in the cars)—but it is of special importance to discuss the near-sighted, the far-sighted, and the astigmatic conditions.

Near-sight is a defect ordinarily referable to too great depth of the eyeball. The effect upon the retinal image is the same that is produced in a camera when the distance between the lens and the plate is made greater than it should be for landscape work. The distant view becomes blurred and indistinct, while objects at short range are sharply defined. So in the near-sighted eye no clear picture of the distance is obtainable, but things close by are seen with a minimum of effort. What is called the normal eye is used without strain for observing things at a distance, and applied to near work with a certain sustained contraction of what is known as the accommodation

muscle. Moderate near-sightedness adapts one to read or sew with even less fatigue than if the eyes were strictly normal. Nevertheless, the condition has serious disadvantages.

If a child is at all near-sighted it may be predicted that the defect will grow graver during the period of school life. The actual nervous strain involved is slight, but the indirect results may be deplorable. The boy who cannot see well at a distance cuts a ludicrous figure in vigorous outdoor sport, and, being subjected to ridicule, abandons the attempt to take part in it. At first he is sensitive and aggrieved. Later he convinces himself that athletics are not worth while and he inclines to become a bookworm, with a serious lack of physical stamina. It is fortunate if he is not a conceited prig in the bargain.

Far-sight, so far as its cause is concerned, is the exact opposite of near-sight. The eyeball is not deep enough. A simple experiment with a camera will serve to show that such a relationship between lens and screen will result in a failure to focus anything sharply, though the distance will be better imaged than the foreground. By an effort such as one with normal vision makes to see objects near by, the far-sighted person secures clear vision for distance; to read or do other close work he must subject the accommodation muscle to an additional strain. Thus, his eyes are never at rest when they are being used at all. Yet he can see quite well anything to which he turns his attention, and it may be hard to make him accept the fact that he has a visual defect calling for glasses. Headaches, indigestion, and general nervous disturbances may result from this condition.

Regular astigmatism is an imperfection of the cornea or anterior surface of the eye. In the majority of cases the trouble is an excess of curvature up and down as compared with that from right to left. This has been well described as spoon-shaped cornea; in geometric terms this important refracting surface of the eye is ellipsoid instead of spheric. The purely optical consequences

need not be set forth; the word "astigmatism" means literally "not pointedness," and the reference is to the fact that with such curvatures a point outside can never be imaged as a point upon the retina. Vision can never be satisfactory, but at a given moment certain linear features of the scene will be clearer than others which have a different direction. The attempt to change the degree of accommodation so as to have a better definition for the second set of lines results in sacrificing the sharpness of the first. Hence, there is a restless flutter of the accommodation mechanism, a perpetual attempt to gain a comprehensive view, which is destined always to be baffled.

The effects of common astigmatism upon health are much like those of far-sight. The glasses used to correct the deficiency must themselves be astigmatic, but in a sense opposite to that in the eyes to which they are added. They must have their least curvature in the meridian in which the cornea has its greatest. The mounting of such lenses is evidently a matter of importance, for there is only one position in which they can fulfil their purpose.

Sound heredity, successful nutrition, and eyes free from hurtful strain go far toward securing an efficient nervous system, but we have yet other factors to reckon with. All bodily conditions which cause discomfort must be regarded as possible sources of central injury. It is probable, moreover, that many peripheral derangements which we think we can ignore or which may even have escaped our recognition, may be productive of much harm. We have seen that this is true of far-sight. An eminent surgeon, G. W. Crile, has furnished striking evidence that this may be frequently a fact. The foundation of his exposition is the body of information we possess with respect to anesthesia.¹

When ether or chloroform is introduced into the blood and carried to the brain there is an interruption of certain processes in the neurons which modifies or destroys consciousness, but we have no warrant for assuming that

¹ Boston Medical and Surgical Journal, 1910, clxiii, 892.

ordinary anesthesia suspends all the many central activities. In fact, we know that it does not, for it would be fatal if it did. The presumption is that certain synapses are much more easily affected than others, whence it follows that we can subdue cortical currents to a considerable extent without paralyzing the respiratory center. Now, it is the belief of Crile that when an operation is conducted under ether or chloroform, streams of impulses ascend to the brain from the seat of the cutting and cauterizing. These would produce terrible pain in the conscious subject and reflex struggling of the most desperate intensity. In the actual case the pain is avoided and the reflexes are greatly reduced. But are we to suppose that the afferent impulses are wholly without effect upon the brain? Crile contends that they continue to work injury to the central gray matter even in the absence of consciousness and reflexes.¹

Experimental evidence has been secured by making microscopic studies of the brain tissue in animals which have undergone severe operations under the common anesthetics. Cellular changes are described which are of the same nature as those long held to denote profound fatigue. Such alterations are not seen in the brains of animals which have merely been etherized for a long time without operation. Hence, Crile refers them to the inflow of impulses from the parts that have been so powerfully stimulated.

All this may seem to be a technical digression, but we shall find that it opens certain considerations of the most practical kind. It will be noted that the central fact in Crile's thesis is this: Sensation does not constitute a reliable measure of the damage done to the nervous system by afferent currents. To disregard a source of such impulses is not to nullify their influence. It is always better to remove the cause than to seek to suppress the cerebral echo. Using a text like this, we may indict the principles of psychotherapy under any of its various

¹ Criticism by Forbes, McIntosh, and Sefton, American Journal of Physiology, 1916, xl, 503.

names when it seeks to treat organic disease. It undertakes to abolish pain, and this it may do with surprising success. But this is a species of narcosis and carries with it no certain assurance that the nervous system is not to suffer progressive injury from the subconscious stimulation.

This criticism should not be launched without giving larger recognition to the usefulness of psychotherapeutic measures, even where the trouble is an organic one. Freedom from pain favors sleep and nutrition. Hence, it may easily prove to be the only condition which is needed to initiate a recovery. Again, the banishment of pain is always beneficent when the disease is incurable. But when the peripheral cause of distress can be corrected, it is always better to attend to it.

One can readily think of a rather large number of physical lesions which are apt to be tolerated or even forgotten which are possible sources of injurious stimulation. Defective teeth afford an example. Many troubles associated with the feet, such as corns, broken arches, or even badly fitted shoes, belong in the same class. Nasal obstructions may have the same influence. Hemorrhoids, sacro-iliac difficulties, and uterine displacements are more serious conditions and have a like tendency, only more obviously effective. Surgical operations for their relief may bring about what is little less than a regeneration of the character of the individual. Among temporary causes of imperfectly realized nervous strain may be mentioned the wearing of orthodontia appliances. Children obliged to submit to these instruments may not complain of great distress, but they are likely to be made irritable and tired by the constant wear and tear. An additional factor in some cases is found in the loss of pleasure in eating which the apparatus is likely to entail.

A word of criticism may be introduced here regarding current views concerning ventilation. The simple and summary doctrine prevails that air cannot be bad unless it is too warm. The odors by which we usually gage the success or failure of a system are lightly treated. It is

said that we soon cease to perceive them, and that, *therefore*, they do not signify anything of moment. Is this not a dangerous assumption? An odor is the sign of a chemical agent working upon the nervous system; we have no right to say that this agent has ceased to act when we have ceased to feel its immediate effects. Such a claim is equivalent to the assertion that nothing can influence a sleeper unless it wakes him.

Less attention is usually paid to the bodily sources of nervous impairment such as we have been discussing than to the influence of occupation, surroundings, and the mental life. Nervous break-downs are most frequently attributed to overwork. But according to the judgment of the ablest specialists work in itself is not often the sole cause of these disasters. Work may be hard and fatiguing, but if it is congenial and at all successful, if it does not encroach upon the hours of sleep, and if it is not a subject of anxiety which the worker cannot easily dismiss, it is not likely to do him harm. If, on the other hand, the work involves worry and discouragement, if it so fills the mind that it cannot be put aside at will, it does become a menace to the poise and efficiency of the nervous system.

If work is of an unwelcome kind and is performed in a rebellious spirit, so much the worse for the subject. The question may be asked: What of the mill-operatives, with their monotonous and uninteresting tasks, are they particularly subject to nervous disease? One would at first say that they must be so, but there are certain factors which favor their protection against it.¹ They are not obliged to think of their work at all beyond the hours assigned to it. Unless they are doing piece-work they have no ambition to increase speed. Moreover—and this is a very important point—they do not have at short intervals to make choices between different duties which demand attention. There is a restful element in having but one definite thing to do and being freed from the anxiety

¹ But see Goldmark, "Fatigue and Efficiency," New York Charities Publication Committee, 1912.

lest some other matter should have had the precedence. The sense of being pressed by numerous concerns of nearly equal urgency is probably a root of much evil in the life of the "careful and troubled" housewife.

The clash of antipathetic personalities is a most serious element among the causes of nerve-fag. It is one which becomes steadily more potent for injury when a certain measure of fatigue has arrived, for added irritability means more and more grievous friction. It is a rare family in which the atmosphere is not improved by temporary separation of the house-mates. The entertaining of visitors serves a good purpose when the guests absorb attention that would otherwise be bestowed exclusively upon members of the home circle and in a critical spirit. It is a lamentable fact that in most families there is more restraint in speech and more consideration in conduct when outsiders are present; this suggests another valuable service rendered by company. Neurasthenia is, in a certain sense, a contagious disease: one case fully developed may give rise to others, though the secondary ones are ordinarily less severe.

We have referred before (page 171) to the disastrous effects of desires continually entertained but denied satisfaction. This is a matter of the first importance. It is plain enough that a man whose legitimate aims are foiled again and again must suffer severely. This is just as surely true of a man who is haunted by wishes which he himself represses but cannot nullify. Often the repression seems so successful that the inward contention is not acknowledged.

The wear and tear consequent on this state of being at odds with oneself is the particular field of Freudian psychanalysis. It is too complex a subject to be treated by any but the specialist. An illuminating book introducing the problem is Holt's "The Freudian Wish" (Henry Holt, pub., New York, 1915). The "wish" may be subconscious and so be better described as a tendency. The heart of the matter may be given a scriptural expression:

"A double minded man is unstable in all his ways"—his health included.¹

Some one has shrewdly pointed out that one fruitful source of mischief in the nervous system consists in what may be succinctly described as not minding one's own business. People easily fall into the habit of fretting over the beliefs and the behavior of their associates in matters in which individual liberty ought to be respected. Among the uneducated this results in the attempt to dictate, and futile contention follows. Higher in the social scale a man or woman who commits this error may not be so aggressive, but will brood unhappily over the principles or actions held in such strong disapproval. It is much better not to be the "brother's keeper" unless the interest is clearly philanthropic. Why should a man distress himself because a fellow-being is fond of cheese, which he does not like?—or goes to church, which he does not wish to do? It is sound hygiene to live and let live. The world, indeed, needs reformers, but their task is one which calls for so much personal sacrifice that they should be sure the cause is worthy of the expenditure. A sense of humor is a saving grace for those in whom the impulse to regulate the lives of others is a powerful one.

Useless controversy is a source of gradual injury to those who indulge in it. While a man must form opinions and know how to marshal arguments for them, he can defend them best if he is temperate and charitable. Like a lawyer he should discriminate between the ideas of his opponent, which he may properly attack, and the opponent himself, whom he may regard as a very good fellow. Arguing with oneself, when it is not settling a new question but rehearsing an old debate with the conclusion foreseen, is an extremely exhausting practice. Circular habits of thought are like the eddies that wear pot-holes in the rocks.

Let us summarize the conditions we have named as

¹ For a clear, elementary account see Watson, "The Psychology of Wish Fulfilment," *Scientific Monthly*, 1916, III, 479.

helping to maintain the nervous system in a normal state and so to keep the individual happy and efficient. We have recognized that a sound inheritance goes far to secure this end. Any neurotic tendency of the stock is a handicap and makes it the more imperative that other unfavorable influences shall be avoided. Physical defects are to be corrected wherever possible, even though it may seem easy to put up with them. Environmental factors, such as fresh air, well-regulated illumination, and quiet for the hours of sleep, must receive attention. A moderate but not a harassing variety of occupation and thought is to be recommended. And no responsibility which it is not clearly a duty to bear—no gratuitous anxiety—is to be assumed.

Sometimes people exhaust themselves in what is judged to be purely unselfish and sacrificing devotion. To such it may be necessary to say that future as well as present usefulness must be considered. The sum total of service that can be rendered to the family or other associates is likely to be greater when there is some deliberate sparing of one's self, some reservation of time for rest and recreation, than when the offering of labor and sympathy is absolutely unsparing. Of course, there are exceptional crises when any thought of self would be base, but, as a rule, the greatest contribution can be made by those who practise a wise conservation of their resources.

Reference must be made once more to the inestimable value of the Seventh Day for the preservation of the nervous system. The deepest degradation to which the Sabbath can be subjected is to fill it with odd jobs left over from the week's routine. The compulsions of Sunday should be from within, not from without. So far as possible the day should bring complete release from habitual petty cares and scope for the idealistic life. A certain parallel may be suggested between the renewing function of the Sabbath and the benefit to the eyes that proceeds from relaxing the muscle of accommodation.

We necessarily bestow much of our attention upon objects close at hand and rapidly changing. We rest our eyes by looking away to the mountains with their unvarying outlines. So the nervous system, after making its swift adaptive changes to meet the innumerable little exigencies of the six days, may well be permitted on the seventh to find a profoundly restful relation to "the things which are not seen."

CHAPTER XVII

NEURASTHENIA

IN the previous chapter we have attempted to catalog some of the factors which tend to subject the nervous system to gradually deepening injury. We have now to devote some space to the ways in which this injury is usually manifested. "Nervous fatigue," "nerve fag," "nervous prostration," "nervous exhaustion"—these are expressions used to denote different degrees of a condition which is covered by the word "neurasthenia."¹ It is an example of what is called a "functional disorder." By this term physicians characterize diseases in which no structural change in the tissues can be demonstrated postmortem. Ordinary neurasthenia is thus brought into contrast with those perversions of nervous reaction which are caused by obvious abnormalities of the brain—paralyses, manias, epilepsies, etc., due to hemorrhages, tumors, infections, and the like. The adjective *organic* is the one chosen to set over against the term "functional."

The distinction between functional and organic troubles is often a helpful one, but it may be criticized as unscientific. There is a medical maxim which says, "There is no psychosis without a neurosis," that is, the nervous system will not act in an abnormal way unless it is physically abnormal. All its disorders are, therefore, organic in the best sense, and a functional disease is a fiction. All that can be claimed for the so-called functional disturbances is that the derangement is chemical rather than structural, molecular rather than molar. It follows, however, that recovery is much more probable in the functional cases.

¹ The word is often restricted to cases of a certain type. It is here used more inclusively, but in a way which does no violence to the root meaning. For a different usage and a fuller classification of nervous failings see Cabot, "A Layman's Hand-book of Medicine," Houghton, Mifflin Co., Boston, 1916.

If a layman is to enter at all upon a theme which properly belongs to the practitioner, he should cite the authority from which he draws most freely. The chief source of the following account is Courtney's "The Conquest of Nerves."¹ The book can be commended to all who seek an analysis of neurasthenia at once scientific and sympathetic, with many sane suggestions for its relief. The same author has contributed the section on the nervous system in Pyle's "Personal Hygiene,"² where a more condensed presentation of similar material may be found.

The nervous system seems to suffer from fatigue of two orders. First, there is that which may be called the daily type, from which complete recovery occurs in the course of a night's sleep. This has been sufficiently discussed (see Chapter XII). Another type of fatigue is that which is cumulative from day to day, and which cannot be quickly compensated. It results from the coexistence of some or all the factors mentioned in the last chapter, and when it is far enough developed it is recognized as neurasthenia. There is a single principle which proves to be the key to the problem: it is the fact that in nervous fatigue of the central order there is a large element of hypersensitivity and consequent excessive activity.

We usually think of fatigue as a distinct depression of capacity for action. This is true in a general way of the neuromuscular system, though even with the simplified conditions of laboratory trials it has been shown that a moderate amount of contraction increases the working power of muscle. Lee has interpreted this as meaning that the metabolic products of the contractile process, the same compounds which in larger quantities will limit the performance of the mechanism, act at first as stimulants. This seems to be much more distinctly the case with the neurons of the brain and cord.

We can often observe in people tired by a day of excitement—perhaps of sightseeing—that there is an appear-

¹ Macmillan, New York, 1911.

² W. B. Saunders Co., Philadelphia.

ance of stimulation. They are talkative and demonstrative. They laugh easily and with abandon. Their state suggests a mild intoxication. It may be that the condition is more like an intoxication than we should be inclined to think. We account for the garrulity of banqueters by saying that the alcohol has acted as a narcotic, selecting the inhibitory centers for its primary action and so giving the outward and subjective signs of stimulation. The influence of the fatigue substances upon the brain may be much like this. Whether the secret of the influence consists in a general stimulation or in the withdrawal of desirable inhibitions, the obvious result is augmented activity.

Once before we have alluded to the fact that the tired nervous system craves employment, though it needs repose. Many people will appreciate the following instance cited by J. J. Putnam: An overwrought woman had appealed to an old physician for advice. He had told her that she must rest. Her reply was that she did not feel tired and could not bring herself to be still. "Madam," said the doctor, "you will have to lie down until you are tired and *then* rest." A hyperexcitability like this is unhappily common in children, who nowadays have less training in the exercise of inhibition than fell to the lot of earlier generations. We may now go on to see how consistently the neurasthenic exemplifies this heightened nervous activity in every department of his organization. It is easy to recognize that a vicious cycle is involved, the overaction intensifying the fatigue and yet failing to bring automatic relaxation.

Guided by Courtney, we shall consider the signs of neurasthenia as they appear in four realms. These are: (1) The motor mechanism, (2) the sensory equipment, (3) the autonomic or visceral field, and (4) the temperament. The connections of all these are such that disturbances in one must be expected to overflow upon the others. The reflex principle makes this inevitable. In order that an organism shall be properly adjusted to

its normal environment its central nervous system must have a medium degree of resistance to the transmission of impulses. If the resistance is raised, as by anesthesia, the result is too great inertia; if the resistance is unduly lowered, there are wasteful and exhausting reactions in response to stimuli which might as well have failed to produce any discharge of energy.

1. In the realm of the skeletal muscles nervous fatigue expresses itself in the familiar form of restlessness. The victim has less than his usual endurance and may be consciously tired by his own unprofitable activity, but he cannot keep still. He crosses and uncrosses his legs, fumbles with his watch-chain, twirls his moustache, walks about aimlessly, and tries one chair after another. Courtney has acutely noted the predilection of the neurasthenic for rockers, which give an outlet to his uneasiness. In some sanitariums the trouble is attacked along this line; hard and simple manual work is prescribed and pushed to the point of weariness, that primitive exhaustion which is pleasant by contrast with the other and which brings sleep as its reward.

2. The sensory symptoms are just what we might expect if the central characteristic is one of lowered resistance. Stimuli which are not noticed by one in health are felt unpleasantly, and sensations readily ignored by the normal man become torment. This is true for the cutaneous sensations; the neurasthenic is dissatisfied with the feeling of his clothes and his bed. He is morbidly sensitive to changes of temperature. When others would say merely that the room had grown a trifle warm, he says that it is unbearably hot. When it is really a little cooler than is ideal, he feels thoroughly chilled. He is much affected by all changes of weather and may conceive an aversion for certain winds, proving his keenness of judgment by announcing each change.

The eyes share the general supersensitiveness. Strong light is objectionable and the shrinking from it may grow into photophobia. The after-images, those spots of com-

plementary color which anyone may observe after looking fixedly at bright objects, become persistent and disquieting. The entoptic appearances, the shreds and spots in the humors of the eye and the twinkling corpuscles in the capillaries of the retina, obtrude themselves upon the attention. Johannes Müller was at one time greatly distressed by the loss of the power to exclude these things from his consciousness. They may be seized upon as symptoms of ocular or brain disease.

As it is with the eye, so it is with the ear. Sounds become wearisome; sometimes the loud ones are particularly irritating, so that the subject cannot bear to hear children at play, sometimes the greatest annoyance proceeds rather from slight and repeated noises, like the ticking of a clock or the gnawing of a mouse within the bedroom wall. Olfactory stimuli may have an intensified effect and the detestation of certain odors may seem unreasonable. The sensory relations of the neurasthenic should serve to make clear to a well person how desirable it is to be protected against so many of these possible sources of discomfort by the height of the normal "threshold." The same external forces assail the vigorous and the weakened subjects alike, but the sufferer from nervous fatigue is like a man without a cuticle—everything is felt too keenly.

3. As the admission of impulses into the central fabric is too free, so the outpouring that follows is too profuse. We have seen how this is expressed through the neuromuscular system as unrest. We have now to turn to the autonomic system. Impulses sent out over the paths of this system may have either inhibitory or excitatory effects. We find evidence of their action upon the heart, the blood-vessels, the digestive tract, the genito-urinary organs, and the sweat-glands. The list might readily be extended to include still other responding elements.

Heart symptoms in the neurasthenic are common. They may be due in part to the direct flow of impulses of undesirable intensity from the medulla to the organ; they

are very likely to be augmented by reflex influences from a disordered alimentary canal. Irregularities of the heart-beats are likely to be noticed and there are uneasy sensations of abnormal mobility about the heart, feelings "as though it turned over," etc. The acceleration during muscular activity may seem greater than it should be and the victim may become fearful of local organic defects. Along with the cardiac misbehavior there will probably be vasomotor instability. It is the duty of the vasomotor system to maintain a proper and nearly steady arterial pressure. Failure to do this may result in feelings of faintness and vertigo, perhaps, at other times, in headache.

To the perverted action of the vasomotor system we may ascribe the exaggerated judgments of warmth and cold already mentioned. If the nervous mechanism is in such a "hair-trigger" condition that a slight rise of the external temperature causes an intense flushing of the skin, while a slight depression renders it anemic, these impressions are to be expected. It is to be remembered that the temperature which we feel is that of the skin and not that of the air. The waxing and waning of the cutaneous blood-flow will have as much to do with the sensation as the state of the air outside. In the neurasthenic the vasomotor changes which accompany emotion are excessive. Extraordinary outbreaks of perspiration are frequent.

The symptoms arising from the functional derangement of the alimentary canal are of especial importance. It was stated in an earlier chapter that this essential system has such a degree of automaticity that in many cases it might work better with no intercourse with the brain and cord than it is actually observed to do. Foster speaks of the improvement of digestive capacity often noted in the aged. As the nerve-centers become less dominant the stomach and intestine do their duty in a more reliable manner than they did under more constant regulation, and the former dyspeptic "eats with the courage and success of a boy." In view of such facts we can under-

stand that the organs of digestion in the neurasthenic are suffering from too much intermeddling.

The central influence is so largely inhibitory that the chief effect may be characterized as a general retardation of the activities of the tract. This includes a loss of positiveness in movement and a withholding of secretions. The stomach retains its contents longer than it should, and instead of being acted upon by a strong and antiseptic gastric juice, they are fermented by micro-organisms. What happens in the stomach is continued with minor variations in the intestine. The extensive decomposition may well give rise to definitely poisonous bodies and so to auto-intoxication, which is thus both a cause and an effect of neurasthenia. Another annoying result of the fermentation is the voluminous production of gas. This feature of nervous prostration is so marked that some physicians have thought that the quantity of the gas could not all be due to bacterial action. They have considered whether it might not come in part from an actual secretion of carbon dioxid from the blood into the tract. At any rate, it becomes a source of discomfort, even of sharp pain, while the distention is likely to occasion reflex disturbances of heart action. The picture is a familiar one, particularly in the country, where there is less thought for appearances—the sallow, angular dyspeptic, with frequent sighs and yawns and noisy belching of gas.

With deficient tone and peristalsis, constipation is to be anticipated. It may be extreme and is a matter much brooded over by the sufferer. He may be much given to experimenting with cathartics and enemata. On the other hand, constipation may actually exist and yet be unrecognized, for, if there are massive accumulations in the colon which the relaxed muscles fail to displace, the local irritation may set up a catarrhal condition with liquid discharges made urgent by the ever-present gas and simulating diarrhea. There are two places in the large intestine where fecal retention is likely and which may become the seat of pain. One is near the spleen

(close to the lower ribs on the left side) and the other is at the sigmoid flexure lower down on the same side. Severe pain is said to arise from the overloaded sigmoid and to be referred to the left groin and hip-joint.

These various pains are not readily attributed by the neurasthenic to their ignoble and commonplace cause. He is half-anxious to find grounds for the belief that he is suffering from a mortal disease, and he prefers the idea of a cancer to constipation of nervous origin. Courtney says incisively that his fears lead only to an anticlimax—he is very likely to develop hemorrhoids.

The genito-urinary tract does not escape the influences of the overactive centers. The concentration of the urine varies in an erratic way between extremes. When it is scanty and high colored, depositing sediment on standing, the subject may diagnose his case as Bright's disease. If, a little later, it becomes pale and profuse, he may decide that he has diabetes. There is plenty of pernicious advertising matter to confirm any of his conclusions. The bladder is likely to be irritable and micturition frequent. The reactions of the reproductive organs come in for a share of anxious surveillance, especially in the young. Here, even more than with the kidneys, the insidious suggestions of quacks sent broadcast in their repulsive literature may stimulate agonies of fear.

4. Many glimpses of the subjective state in neurasthenia have already been afforded. It is one of egotism, disregard of others, and self-pity. We have most of us reason to cherish memories of men and women who have gone with splendid heroism and unselfishness through seasons of suffering and even to death. We know of sainted invalids. But these cases which move us so deeply to reverent admiration are the ones in which the nervous system in its higher parts has been left relatively unscathed. When it is disordered we can no more expect an exhibition of fine and strong character than we can expect beautiful music from an instrument which is altogether out of tune. The neurasthenic is not his best self.

When this is said, the question arises, Is there a sharp line between the temporary warping of disposition that we see in the neurasthenic and the irresponsibility of definite insanity? A recent writer has set a standard which is an attractive one if we can be wise enough to apply it rightly. It is this: The neurasthenic differs from the psychasthenic, as we may call the graver defective, in the fact that he fabricates nothing, but merely exaggerates and distorts. There is some foundation for all his complaints. He is not insane until he is in touch with things which have no existence for other people. Fortunately, in the vast majority of cases, he is destined to recover his poise and not to cross the sinister boundary.

There are few things more difficult than to deal humanely and yet firmly and consistently with neurasthenia. A tolerant and even mind is called for—one that shall possess all the temperance and perspective which for the time being are so sadly wanting in the patient. The most cruel anguish which must be endured is in experiencing the enfeeblement of affection which has overtaken the stricken husband or wife. Cutting words from the once loyal companion, bitterness that would never be exhibited to a stranger, must be borne without remonstrance. The superiority of the sanitarium to the home in most cases may be traced to the usual failure to live up to such exactations. In the institution some restraint is imposed upon the patient by the strangeness of his contacts, while the trained attendants maintain a uniform attitude instead of alternating between caresses and angry argument.

It must not be forgotten that the suffering described by the neurasthenic is as real as any that life brings. It merits sympathy. Yet the free expression of much sympathy sinks the victim in deeper despondency and encourages him to invent new theories to account for his misery. It also makes his future appear darker than ever. Even the most earnestly phrased sympathy will not seem adequate to the pity-consuming neurasthenic. He remains skeptical as to the possibility that anyone can really appre-

ciate his woe. He is likely to wish that his friend might feel just what he feels, showing in this the marked contrast between his own state and that of the sufferer with rheumatism or tuberculosis, who is glad that others are well if he cannot be.

The studied withholding of sympathy from neurasthenics has often had remarkable results. It is doubtless practised in many sanatoriums, and there is one institution in particular in which it is a chief measure of treatment. The broken-down business man who comes to this resort does not wait long before he attempts to set forth his tale of hopeless suffering, but each attendant cuts short his expatiating with brusque or jocular rejoinders. The spirit of the neurasthenic is deeply wounded and, at first, his self-pity is intensified. Perhaps he casts himself upon his bed and weeps in his desolation, turning his face to the wall like the undisciplined Hebrew king.

If we bear in mind that the central fact in neurasthenia is excess of nervous activity, we shall foresee that correction must come from inhibition. Now, one of the first steps toward the attainment of self-control is taken when the patient becomes assured that he cannot obtain the sympathetic response which he so greatly craves, and begins to hold his tongue. Another reaction which is sometimes beneficial is the provocation of the invalid to anger. At the sanitarium referred to, the harsh attitude maintained by the attendants leads readily to the loss of temper on the part of the sufferer. If he forgets himself so far as to lay hands upon his nurse, he is vigorously handled. Insulted and humiliated, he descends to the uttermost depths after such a passage at arms. But if the experience is repeated at intervals, the regular habits and general hygienic conduct of the institution having their effect in the meantime, the emotion of anger gradually comes to bring with it a sense of power instead of impotence. The return of self-reliance and self-government is said to be splendid to witness. If a day comes when the convalescent demonstrates that he can put his tormentor out into the corridor,

he rejoices with a liveliness that he had never expected to realize again.

Plainly, this systematic piquing of the nervous invalid to restore both the capacity for inhibition and for vigorous performance cannot be practised successfully upon those who have organic disorders as an important element of their condition. Medical or surgical treatment is appropriate in all such cases. Attractive meals and acceptable forms of recreation are of great importance. Courtney protests against the common error of sending neurasthenics into the country, where they find a degree of stagnation that is as distressing to them as the excess of action from which it is planned to have them escape. A medium condition is to be chosen, in which both the sense of pressure and the sense of enforced idleness may be avoided. If the patient is willing to be lazy for a while, this is very fortunate, but it is more likely that he will demand some variety of interests.

Exercise is a definite need of the neurasthenic, but it is desirable that it shall be interesting and not merely mechanical. Courtney recommends hunting, because it is so well calculated to take one out of self and fix the attention on the world outside. The more the mind can be made to concern itself with the messages of the special sense organs, the less it can dwell upon the misbehavior of the body. Much may be said in favor of walking in mild or incipient cases. Long tramps in the country are not quite so refreshing as they were before the automobiles filled the roads with dust and stenches and woke the echoes with their raucous and insulting horns, but it is still possible to choose routes over byways which are rarely invaded by motor cars. The most stimulating element in a walk is novelty. The country should not be well known to the walker. He will then have a delightful series of surprises as the unexpected landscapes open to his view, broad prospects from the hill-tops and glimpses of rushing brooks in shaded valleys.

A vigorous walk of a hundred miles in four days taken

when one has recognized signs of nervous fatigue will often exert a prolonged and favorable influence on one's condition. It is hard to find a congenial companion for such an excursion, and on some accounts it is not a bad plan to go alone. There can then be no clash of wishes, and it may be profoundly restful not to be obliged to talk. The gentle mental stirring which attends the uncertainty regarding the course and ending of each stage is exceedingly wholesome. Equally so on the physical side is the profuse outpouring of perspiration and the compensatory water drinking. Village hotels rather than farmhouses are to be recommended as stopping-places. They do not impose the obligation of sociability upon the tired wayfarer and they usually offer him the luxury of a hot bath.

Sea-voyages are often beneficial to those who lack vigor for more active recreation. There is hardly another situation in which individual responsibility is so successfully annulled and one's fortunes so absolutely committed to others. But the life on shipboard does not appeal to all temperaments. The scenic aspect of the ocean presents abundant variety to the observer who loves it, but another finds it monotonous.

A vacation may be a period of self-direction at one extreme or of submission to discipline at the other. The solitary walk in course of which one need not consider the wishes or the opinions of anyone else is an example of the first type. Plattsburg is representative of the second. Muscular activity is common to the two and so is the reduction of responsibility, for this may come either from abandoning oneself to caprice or by placing oneself under orders. The man who wields authority in business goes back to the apprentice attitude in the military camp and no doubt recovers something of his early freedom from care. When he comes home, fit and hardy, he may somewhat too strongly recommend the camp to a man who is constantly under external compulsions and would profit by temporary freedom to do as he liked.

We have previously maintained that intellectual inter-

ests ought to make for stability of nervous organization. It should now be clear that what the neurasthenic most lacks is sense of proportion. His own concerns are magnified unduly, and the present circumstances are allowed too greatly to outweigh those which have obtained in the past and may return in the future. It is a mark of mental soundness to be able to overrule such a tendency. If a man passing through temporary troubles can live over the happier events of an earlier time, and can realize the probability that they will again be realized, he is sustained by these ties as the Alpine tourist is held safe by the other members of his party.

Some knowledge of science is well calculated to fortify one against egotism. It is hard to see how anyone who possesses the scientist's grasp of time and space can fall into the habit of overemphasizing his own importance to the universe. Yet he should not think meanly of himself. The poise that springs from having a scientific perspective is compounded of belief in the value of individual effort and the restful conviction that when such effort flags through weariness the creative currents of nature flow on in other channels.

This comes very near to religion, at least to Matthew Arnold's faith in "a power not ourselves that makes for righteousness." This has been called the irreducible minimum of religion. For the vast majority of mankind the philosophic belief is not a commanding motive until it is warmed with an infusion of devotion and personality. But whatever the clothing of the central idea, its inestimable power to sustain health and efficiency has been recognized in every age. At the present time it is familiarly associated with Christian Science.

To an outsider the leadership of this cult appears domineering and mercenary. The adherents seem utterly inconsistent. We see them yielding to hunger, fatigue, cold, and heat. They grow old, sicken, and die. Yet we may not doubt that they maintain on their course an exceptionally high average condition. If a touch of

fanaticism encourages them in the belief that the same achievements are denied to those who hold other creeds, we can understand that this very defect is a source of positiveness and conviction. Bigotry is better for man than indifference, though we may well seek to combine earnestness with generosity and tolerance.

Is it not true that many people are constantly losing their hold upon the axioms of religion and, later, rediscovering them? The new phraseology is taken for new truth. But the truth is greater than any human expression of it. It is regrettable when the devotee abandons and contemns statements and exercises of the spiritual life enriched by age-long employment because he is captivated by a novel presentation of the same abiding truth.

Christian Science, rigorously applied, leads to distressing conclusions. We recall noble people who have died from dreadful diseases. We have known their natures well enough to feel that we may not hope to excel them in the will to be well nor in trust in divine benevolence. When the beautiful body of a boy is wrecked by infantile paralysis while his brother grows straight and strong we do not recognize differences of character that in any wise correspond with the physical facts.

The sect has grown apace since the war began. Doubtless the teaching that all suffering is illusory has appealed powerfully to sensitive souls appalled by the woe of Europe. We may recognize the great good that comes from psychotherapy and still deplore its detachment from other philanthropic agencies. Not Christian Science, self-labeled, but Science with a Christian spirit has made Cuba and Panama habitable. Surely, the acceptance of help from any source need not deprive us of any other. The Master of mankind with his transcendent sanity was always saying, in effect, "This ought ye to have done and not to leave the other undone."

CHAPTER XVIII

SOME MATTERS OF GENERAL HYGIENE

It will be well to supplement the suggestions already made with some others that do not readily find their place under the titles of previous chapters. Emphasis has been placed on the fact that all that favors the well-being of the nervous system goes to support the general health. But there is danger of a one-sided view if the opposite assertion is not admitted; namely, that all that ministers to the other systems helps to preserve the nervous mechanism.

Five heads may be suggested which shall fairly cover the requirements of hygiene. These are: (1) A sound inheritance, (2) successful nutrition, (3) suitably varied activity in all departments of organization, (4) rest properly adjusted to the foregoing, and (5) a wholesome environment. When we consider the last-named subject we find that it covers some matters for which the individual is responsible and some which rest upon the community. Sufficient attention has already been bestowed upon some of these topics; others may now be granted a little space.

The teachings of modern science concerning heredity may have confused the thinking of some intelligent readers, and it may be worth while to venture a few comments. The widespread interest in eugenics makes people who are intellectually honest anxious to be rightly informed as to how far they can influence the physical and mental estate of their children. The average man will probably be found to have a very definite belief in this connection. He thinks that his moral victories secure

¹ References: Fisher and Fisk, "How to Live," Funk and Wagnalls, New York, 1915.

Howe, "Syllabus of Personal Hygiene," printed annually for Wellesley College.

stamina in the offspring, and that his lapses weaken his progeny. He is likely to think that athletic training on his part will endow his son with a superior musculature. Similarly, he may assume that scholarly achievements of his own will make similar attainments easier for his children.

When a man holding views like these first hears that scientists generally deny "the inheritance of acquired characters" he is likely to feel that his moral responsibility has been gravely weakened. The immediate impression is that conduct is without significance in heredity, and that a very strong and noble motive for self-restraint has been abolished. Reflection will convince one that such impressions are not wholly warranted. One's obligations are scarcely impaired.

In the first place, there are at least two consequences of transgression which are still believed to pass on from father to son. Syphilis is one of these. The other is the complex of effects induced by alcoholism. Therefore, deterrents from the two commonest forms of intemperance remain in full force. Gonorrhea is not strictly inherited, but the peril of infection at birth and the inclusion of the wife in the calamity leave every possible ground for continence unshaken.

It may now be pointed out that in matters less specific than these the individual may still have reason to consider carefully what manner of life he has led when he contemplates parenthood. His acts may not have *modified* the stock, but we now regard them as *illustrating* its properties. These properties are regarded as having great stability. The son resembles the father not because of certain acts which the father performed, but because the inheritance *common to both* makes them likely to behave in a similar way under similar circumstances. Some one has expressed the fact picturesquely by saying that "the son is not a chip of the old block, but father and son are both chips of the same old block"—the immemorial ancestry which they share.

This being the case, a man reviewing his career and having in mind the probable future of his children may reason somewhat as follows: "My indulgences and my denials have scarcely affected the capacities of the stock. But my indulgences have exhibited its inherent weaknesses and my self-restraint has shown its strength. My failures are ominous and my victories reassuring, for the like are to be expected in the life of my son." The grave and final question is whether the stock ought, on the whole, to be perpetuated. This is complicated by the consideration that the son will owe half his inheritance to the mother. "He is his father's half-brother by a different mother." While it is fair to give due weight to this fact, it is likely that many men have trusted too freely to the maternal stock to neutralize their shortcomings.¹

The data of eugenics are easily subjected to ridicule, while, at the other extreme, too much may be expected from the new science. We can already see that at least one valuable service may be rendered by it. The workers in this field are showing that hereditary defects are of two classes, those due to *lack* and those due to positive features of the germ plasm. A lack can be made good by proper mating; a positive property will taint the offspring whatever partner may have been secured, and so can never be neutralized. It is agreeable to find that the majority of abnormalities are deficiencies, and theoretically can be bred out of the race instead of being allowed to die out. Practically, however, the strong and efficient can hardly be expected to forego mating with their equals to redeem the weaker stocks.

Since reference has been made above to the damage done by alcohol, we may pursue the subject further and say something of its individual as well as its hereditary results. Two opposing views of the general problem are maintained. Most writers assume that alcohol is a chief cause of degeneracy. On the other hand, it is ingeniously

¹ Jordan, "The Heredity of Richard Roe," The American Unitarian Association, Boston, 1911.

maintained that the indulgence is as much a sign as a cause of the conditions with which it is associated. According to this conception, a drunkard is a man who would have been a worthless fellow even if he had never discovered the consolations of liquor. This we can readily grant for certain cases, but we can think of others where we feel sure that nothing but alcoholic intemperance has stood in the way of useful or even brilliant attainment.

One thing which we do not much like to remember is that none of us are many generations removed from ancestors who were frequently intoxicated. Only the Mahometan can claim that his case is otherwise. Reid Hunt, comparing the toxicity of grain alcohol and wood alcohol as determined upon the lower animals, found that while wood alcohol is more poisonous than the other the difference is much less than for man. His suggestion is that the human race is habituated to grain alcohol by ages of drinking. It has never gained any such tolerance for wood alcohol largely because it has not often employed it as a beverage.

Keeping the welfare of the nervous system in the foreground, let us consider the action of alcohol as experienced by those who take it very moderately. It is popularly held to be a stimulant, and the claim has a measure of scientific support. But most students emphasize its depressant property, pointing out—what has been said elsewhere—that to depress the inhibitory centers is to “take off the brakes” and to create an appearance of stimulation. The most impressive articles that have been written in defense of the retention of alcohol have come from writers who did not recommend it as a stimulant, but as a means of promoting mental relaxation and social ease. It is disquieting to the advocate of total abstinence to find that the great majority of the most original and, on the whole, the most admirable men have valued alcohol as a social reagent. It begins to seem as though a reaction were setting in, but it will evidently be a long time before the representative gatherings of leaders in politics,

letters, and even in education will forego their wines without complaint.

It is surprising to note how strongly many intelligent men rebel against the proposal of prohibition. They do not seem to feel that it would be a slight sacrifice to do without alcohol. But we are tempted to ask whether any man is entirely temperate who cares so greatly for the retention of his present privilege. If it is finally voted to banish alcohol no serious hardship should be experienced by men of well-regulated habits. Possibly the aged may be excepted from this statement.

The temperamental change induced by alcohol in moderate quantities is highly characteristic. It may be described as intellectual myopia, a condition in which all that is near at hand—the present company and the interests of the hour—will be found dominant, and all that is remote from these will tend to be excluded. Thus, the cares that weighed upon the banqueter before he came to the feast and the problems he must face next morning are forgotten. We have insisted that this detachment is most desirable and hygienic. But the ideal is to compass it at will without the employment of a chemical artifice. One who can relinquish care as a voluntary act can take it up again promptly and earnestly. The banishment of obligation by alcohol does not permit the same decisive resumption of responsibility. It is well for the man who is head of a family, when he reviews some convivial occasion, to ask himself whether the wife and children at home did not recede farther from the forefront of his consciousness than he would have chosen to have them. Perhaps the bachelor need not be so exacting in his introspective judgment.

It seems wellnigh impossible to write without bias of the social use of alcohol. Those who uphold it charge their opponents with a want of charity and with a disposition to demand needless renunciations of pleasure. They would probably assert that the typical moderate drinker is a kindlier man than the typical abstainer and that he is not less efficient. To be quite just to those who maintain

this position one should read the pleas of such writers as Holmes, Münsterberg, and Heinemann.¹ Janet emphasizes anew the power which alcohol has to overcome low spirits. This is the property for which it is chiefly prized. But, clearly, it is better to be proof against depression than to resort to a corrective such as this.

If it is a difficult matter to pass judgment upon those who use alcohol, what shall be said of caffein, the active principle of tea and coffee? This is an agent which we sometimes hear unsparingly condemned, but most vigorously by those who have substitutes to offer. Many experimental studies have consistently shown that caffein is a true stimulant, actually increasing the capacity for muscular and mental work. The advisability of resorting to a stimulant must depend largely upon the extent of the after-effect and upon possible cumulative injury.

A most painstaking investigation of the properties of caffein was reported recently by Hollingworth.² It was conducted upon a considerable scale, a staff of 7 trained workers gathering data from 16 subjects (of whom 10 were men and 6 women). In all trials of this kind it is necessary to keep the subjects in ignorance of the times at which they receive the drug to be tested. Hollingworth gave them at intervals gelatin capsules many of which were blanks, while others contained measured doses of caffein. The heaviest dose equalled the quantity in two large cups of coffee. Ingenious tests were made as a matter of daily routine, whether the caffein was given or not. Speed, dexterity, discrimination, and mental alertness were observed.

¹ Holmes, "The Autocrat of the Breakfast Table," Riverside Edition, Houghton, Mifflin & Co., Boston, p. 187 *et seq.* Münsterberg, "American Problems from the Point of View of a Psychologist," Moffat, Yard & Co., New York, 1910. Heinemann, "The Rule of Not Too Much," Chicago, 1912. Janet, "Alcohol and Mental Depression," Paris, 1915. For counter-arguments, see Crooker, "Shall I Drink?" The Pilgrim Press, Boston, 1914. Fisk, articles in the Atlantic Monthly, 1916-1917.

² "Archives of Psychology," The Science Press, New York, April, 1912.

The results of the research were almost entirely favorable to caffeine. Gains were recorded in all the capacities investigated. The tests made with the typewriter were of the most practical interest. When caffeine had been received by the worker the copying was accomplished somewhat more rapidly and with fewer errors than at other times. Moreover, when mistakes were made, they were more often recognized on the instant. It is instructive to compare these facts with those that have been secured with alcohol. Both alcohol and caffeine probably inspire the user with confidence in his ability to do his best. But there is a divergence in the actual performance, alcohol failing to give the promised reinforcement, and caffeine confirming the subjective impression quite decisively.

We naturally assume that a period of stimulation will be followed by one of corresponding depression, as the trough of a wave follows the crest. Hollingworth has failed to find evidence of any such reaction. Nothing in the report is more unexpected or more important if it shall be sustained. If it is possible to enhance working power and not entail any extra fatigue, we must conclude that the part played by the stimulant may be quite innocent and desirable. Several years ago a wise teacher suggested that a whip is appropriate for the lazy, but not for the tired, horse.¹

In spite of Hollingworth's impressive findings, it would be unsafe to conclude that all people can advantageously use tea and coffee. Many exceptions are apparent. Even among the members of Hollingworth's squad the larger doses caused some feverish conditions, headache, and sleeplessness. If such reactions were marked and long continued, there can be no doubt that the favorable effects of caffeine would soon be exchanged for detrimental ones. Only three or four of the subjects were non-users of caffeine before the experimental period. It is probable

¹ Hough and Sedgwick, "The Human Mechanism," Ginn & Co., Boston, 1906, chap. xx.

that there are a good many abstainers from coffee who have learned by disagreeable experience that they must do without it.

While we may not condemn in a sweeping fashion the taking of caffeine, nor even the guarded indulgence in alcohol, there is no room for two opinions regarding the dangers of more active drugs. All use of morphin, cocaine, and their congeners is perilous. Temperance in their employment is conceivable, but seems scarcely ever to be realized. The tendency to increase the dosage is almost irresistible. There is hardly a spectacle so tragic as that of the drug victim, steadily deteriorating in character, until his moral cowardice, dishonesty, and lack of self-respect are incredible to the members of his family. Some one has said that "the drunkard turns night into day and the morphinist turns day into night." The influence of cocaine seems to resemble that of alcohol rather more than that of morphin; it leads to reckless and violent crime. There is a popular impression that the habit-forming alkaloids produce delightful subjective states. This seems rarely to be the case after the first foolish ventures; the most that the unhappy wretch reports later is that the drug relieves—and often incompletely—the misery of abstinence.

A final word may be added concerning the attitude which we should maintain toward medicine and the medical profession. Physicians were once held in high respect by all civilized people. At the present time, when the attainments and principles of the profession merit, far more than ever before, popular esteem and admiration, a hostile and skeptical spirit is often manifested. Several causes for this are evident. The fact that drugs are less relied on to remedy diseased conditions than was formerly the case has encouraged the hasty conclusion that they have no value at all. Errant schools, using peculiar therapeutic methods, have fiercely attacked the main body of practitioners. Patients who have been benefited by these special measures have joined heartily in denying the virtue of other kinds of treatment. Psychotherapy has led to the

same reaction in spite of the broad views urged by its ablest exponents. Certain periodicals have made incessant, malicious attacks upon the profession, charging mercenary aims, unwarranted experimentation upon human subjects, and failure to effect cures. It is amusing—even while it is irritating—to note that those who write such articles charge the physician with being unwilling to adopt new methods, and in the next paragraph cry out against his innovations. The dignified silence maintained by medical men in the face of these attacks is not properly appreciated by a thoughtless public.

When it is suggested that physicians and surgeons ask excessive fees there are two or three reflections that should modify judgment. It is a trite saying that restoration to health has a value not easily expressed in money. Second, we should consider the investment of time, strength, and means which has equipped the doctor for his responsible service. Third—and this is often overlooked—it is the generous payments of those who can afford them which make it possible for the practitioner to give his best skill freely to the poor.

Too many intelligent people have failed to read of the achievements of medical science. It is only when the former insecurity of life is contrasted with its present conservation that our indebtedness to the profession is realized. The stories of the conquest of small-pox and yellow fever are among the most thrilling that can be found in human annals. The discovery of the chief methods of anesthesia and of the way to avoid surgical infection—these have almost an equal power to grip the reader. A little acquaintance with the literature of seventy-five years ago suffices to make one realize the horror of epidemics, particularly of yellow fever and cholera. Typhus fever, which once ravaged the steerages of emigrant ships, had become, before the war in Europe, a rare and curious disease. Pessimists often lay stress upon the increasing prominence of certain causes of death. They forget that since man is mortal, the individuals who

escape one malady must later be counted among the victims of another. The happy fact is that they have lived through longer, more vigorous, and more rewarding lives.

In War Time.—As this revision is brought to a close our country stands committed to bear her part in the great war. It is appropriate to ask how public and personal health may be influenced by the new conditions. At first it seems as though nothing but evil could come from the stress, emotional and economic, which the struggle must bring. Are there any good results to be hoped for?

We may reasonably look for some desirable reactions. We shall simplify our living. We shall set a high value on physical fitness. Our national failing, lack of concentration and perseverance, may be overcome as we devote ourselves to great ideals. The spectacle of sacrificial suffering should put an end to egotistic self-pity. We should emerge from the trial sobered, strengthened, and quickened in our humanity.

INDEX

ACCELERATORS, cardiac, 119
Accomplishments, 54
Activity, increased, of thyroid, in emotional disturbance, 169
Adjustors, 18, 33, 52
Adrenal bodies, 92, 109, 173-175
Adrenin, 92
Afferent paths, 75-82, 100, 144
 type of neuron, 31, 32, 78, 79
After-discharge, phenomenon of, 42
Age, 157, 158, 185
Alcohol, 225-229
 and mental depression, 229
Alimentary canal, 126, 215
All-or-none law, 90
Amputation, 45
Anemia, 200
 theory of sleep, 178-181
Anesthesia, 202
Anger, 171, 219
Animals, decerebrate, 130-134, 177
Ant, 48
Antagonistic muscles, 94
Anticipation, 160, 161
Aphasia, motor, 148-150
Association areas, 151, 152
 fibers, 152
 neurons, 33, 52
Associative memory, 129, 130
Astigmatism, 201, 202
Ataxia, 99
Auditory area, 146
 nerve, 73, 81
Auditory nerve, cochlear branch of, 81
Auto-intoxication, 199, 200, 216
Automatic property, 20
Autonomic system, 115-127, 178
 in emotion, 173-175
 in neurasthenia, 214-217
Axis of nervous system, 66, 67
Axis-cylinder or axon, 26

BABY, sleep of, 177
Bell's law, 62
Blood, effect of emotional disturbances on, 168
Brain, circulation in, 179
 frog's, 60-65
 gray matter in, 70
 rabbit's, 65-67
 ventricles of, 64
Breathing, 101
Burnett on decerebrate frogs, 131, note.

CAFFEIN, 229-231
Camis on reflexes, 93
Canals, semicircular, 99
Cannon on emotion, 167-170, 173, 174
Cardiac accelerators, 119
 nerves, 118, 119
Carlson on hunger during sleep, 178
Cavities of central nervous system, 62-64
Cell theory, 22

Cell-bodies as contributors, 42
 Cell-body, 30
 Cells, 22-24
 Cerebellum, 65, 68, 96-99, 129
 Cerebral hemispheres. See *Cerebrum*.
 Cerebrospinal fluid, 61
 Cerebrum, 64, 70, 88, 128-156
 lobes of, 71
 Chiasma, 73
 Chorda tympani, 120
 Christian Science, 222, 223
 Circulation in brain, 179
 City life, 169
 Cochlear branch of auditory nerve, 81
 Cold, sensation of, 78
 Concentration and detachment, 159, 161
 Conduction, 25, 79
 Congestion, 123, 124
 Connective tissue, 11
 Constipation, 216, 217
 Contractile tissue, 12
 Controversy, 207
 Convulsions, 70
 Coördination, 14, 93
 Corpora quadrigemina, 66
 Corpus callosum, 70
 Cortex, 70, 137
 Coughing, 50
 Courtney on neurasthenia, 211-220
 Cranial nerves, 60, 71-74
 Crile on unfelt injury, 202-205
 Crura cerebri, 69
 Cytoplasm, 24

DANCING, 110
 Darwin's use of limited strength, 160

Decerebrate animals, 130-134, 177
 child, 133
 Degeneration, 35
 Delirium, 92
 Dendrites, 29
 Dendrons, 29
 Depth of sleep, 181, 182
 Descartes on memory, 137
 on reflexes, 49
 Diabetes and emotional disturbances, 168
 Diaphragm, 104
 Diet, influence of, 113
 Discontinuity, 161
 Dreams, 189-197
 classified, 189
 eyes in, 196
 sensations in, 203
 symbolism in, 192
 visceral symbols in, 192
 Drugs, 231

EAR, internal receptors of, 99
 Early conceptions of nerve action, 37
 Effectors defined, 18
 Elbow, 42
 Electric phenomena, 18, 39, 174
 Ellis on dreams, 181, 189-197
 Emotion, 166-175
 excess in, exhausting, 170
 intensity of, in punishment of child, 170
 Emotional disturbances and diabetes, 168
 effect of, on blood, 168
 increased activity of thyroid in, 169
 Epilepsy, 143
 Epithelial tissue, 12
 Equilibrium, 81, 97

Escape (of heart), 118
Eugenics, 224-226
Evolution of nervous system, 19
Exhaustion from excess in emotion, 170
Eye-muscles, 74
Eye-strain, 200-202
Eyes in dreams, 196

FAR-SIGHT, 201
Fatigue and dreams, 190-192
general, 210-212
neuromuscular, 102-111
synaptic, 106
Fatigue-products, 102, 103
Fibers, association, 152
regeneration of, 35
secretory, 127
Fibrils, 26, 34
Fingers, 80
Flatulence, 216
Flechsig on association areas, 152
Fletcher on hours of sleep, 185
Flourens, pioneer experiments, 131, 134
Forbes on fatigue, 106-108
Foster on old age, 157, 215
Freud on dreams, 194
Freudian psychanalysis, 206
Friction, domestic, 206
Frog's nervous system, 60-65
Functional and organic disorders, 210

GAGE, Phineas, 153
Gall, phrenologist, 135
Ganglia, 27, 117
of dorsal roots, 78
Ganglion, Gasserian, 80
Genito-urinary symptoms, 217
Glands, nervous control of, 127

Goltz's decerebrate dog, 133
Gordon on infant mind, 155
Gradation of muscular responses, 89-93
Gravity and the circulation, 124, 125
Gray and white matter, 26-28
matter in brain, 70
in cord, 68
Growth of muscles with use, 112
Gyri, 70

HABITS, 54, 156, 157
Hearing, 81
Heart, 117-120, 121, 122, 215
inhibition of, 118
Heredity, 198, 224-226
Hollingworth on caffein, 229, 230
Hormones, 16
Howell on sleep, 179, 184
Hunger during sleep, 178
Hunt on alcohol, 227
Hygiene, 156-165, 169-173, 184-186, 190-192, 206-209, 220-233
Hypnotism, rapport of, 56

INDIVIDUAL, 16, 17, 47, 128
Infancy, 154-156
Inhibition, 20, 21, 158, 216, 219
of heart, 118
withdrawal resembles stimulation, 21, 212, 227
Inhibitory influence on centers, 105, 109
Insomnia, 186
Integration, 16
Intelligence, 128, 147
Intensity of emotion in punishment of child, 170
of nerve impulses, 45
Intercellular substance, 24
Intoxication, 212

JAMES on emotion, 168, 170, 171
 on habits, 156, 157

James-Lange theory, 166, 174

Janet on alcohol and mental depression, 229

Jordan on heredity, 226

LABYRINTH, 99

Language, 148-151

Law, all-or-none, 90
 Bell's, 62

Lee on fatigue, 103, 211

Lincoln's power of detachment, 159

Lingle on tonus, 91

Lobes of cerebrum, 71

Localization, 134-153

Loeb on localization, 140

Lucas on muscular action, 89-93

MARTIN et al. on sensory threshold, 163

Medicine, 231, 232

Medulla, 63, 129, 144

Mellus on the cortex, 151

Memory, 138, 162, 191
 associative, 129, 130

Meninges, 61, 62

Mental preparation for sleep, 186

Midbrain, 64

Monotony, 161

Motor aphasia, 148-150
 areas, 139-144
 end-plates, 87, 103, 105, 113, 168
 neurons, 33, 85

Müller, 43, 214

Müllerian principle, 44, 76

Münsterberg on free agency and mind, 142

Muscle-fibers, 85

Muscles, antagonistic, 94
 eye-, 74

NATIONAL failing, 161

Near-sight, 200, 201

Nerve action, early conceptions of, 37
 auditory, 73, 81
 impulses, 37-40, 43, 44
 olfactory, 65, 71
 in fish, 130
 optic, 65, 72
 trigeminal, 73, 80
 vagus, 73
 vestibular, 81

Nerve-centers, 53

Nerve-fibers, 25, 26

Nerve-impulses, intensity of, 45

Nerve-trunks, Tashiro on formation of waste-products in, 39

Nerves, 25
 cardiac, 118, 119
 cranial, 60, 71-74
 reunited by surgical operations, 35, note.
 spinal, 60

Neurasthenia, 193, 210-222
 sensations in, 213, 214

Neurasthenic temperament, 193, 217

Neuromuscular fatigue, 102-111
 unit, 86, 87

Neuron, afferent type, 31, 32, 78, 79

Neurons, association, 33
 motor, 33, 85
 postganglionic, 116
 preganglionic, 116

Neuropile, 34

Newborn, 54

Nodes of Ranvier, 26

Nucleus, 24

Nutritional disturbances, 199

OCCUPATION, 205

Olfactory area, 146

Olfactory nerve, 65, 71
in fish, 130

Optic chiasma, 73
nerve, 65, 72

Orthodontia, 204

Otoliths, 100

Overwork, 205

PAIN, 205

Paths of easy transmission, 47

Perikaryon, alteration through activity, 41, 203
defined, 30
reinforcing function, 41
related to nutrition, 35

Phenomenon of after-discharge, 42

Phrenology, 135, 136

Pilomotor action, 126

Play and work, 111

Plethysmograph, 183

Pons, 68, 69

Postganglionic neurons, 116

Posture, 125

Preganglionic neurons, 116

Prince on memory, 138

Profanity, 149

Prohibition, 228

Projection fibers, 88, 144

Protoplasm, 24

Psychanalysis, 194-196
Freudian, 206

Psychasthenia, 218

Psychology, 16, 141

Psychotherapy, 204, 222

Punctiform sensibility, 77

Punishment of child, intensity of emotion in, 170

Putnam on fatigue, 212

RABBIT's brain, 65-67

Ranvier, nodes of, 26

Rapport of hypnotism, 56

Reaction-time, 58

Reading area, 150

Receptors, 18, 76
of internal ear, 99

Reciprocal innervation, 95, 96

Recreation, 159

Reflexes, 49-59, 87
conditioned, 55
type of all nervous action, 140

Regeneration of fibers, 35

Religion, 164, 208, 222

Respiratory center, 101

Restlessness, 213

Right-handed condition, 147

Roots, dorsal and ventral, 62

Ruts, 47, 157

SABBATH, 162-165, 208, 209

Saccule, 99

Science, 222, 223

Sea-voyages, 221

Secretory fibers, 127

Semicircular canals, 99

Sensations, 45, 76-84, 105
general and special, 83, 84
in dreams, 197
in neurasthenia, 213, 214

Sense-organs, 62

Sensibility, punctiform, 77

Sensory centers, 53
threshold, 163, 214

Sexual life, 194, 195, 225

Sherrington on coördination, 94-96

Singing, 172

Skill, 114

Skin, 75, 122, 123

Sleep, 176-188
anemia theory of, 179-181
depth of, 181
hunger during, 178

Sleep, mental preparation for, 186
of baby, 177
toxemia theory of, 178-181

Smell, 81

Speech center, 148-151

Spinal cord, 60, 69, 128
gray matter in, 70

Spiral passage, 99

Spontaneity, 132

Starling on cerebrum, 128

State of waking, 177

Stedman on Lincoln, 159

Stimuli, 17, 36, 37, 82

Strain, eye-, 200-202

Sulci, 70

Surgical operations, nerves re-united by, 35, *note*.

Symbolism in dreams, 192

Sympathetic system, 117, 173

Sympathy, 171, 218
withholding of, 219

Synapse, 28, 34, 88
valve action of, 29, 30

Synaptic fatigue, 106
resistance, 46, 47, 187

TASHIRO on formation of waste-products in nerve-trunks, 39

Taste, 81

Temperature and blood-flow, 123, 215

Thomson on aphasia, 149
on sleep, 177

Thyroid, increased activity of, in emotional disturbances, 169

Tissues, 11-14
connective, 11
contractile, 12
epithelial, 12
nervous, 13

Tolerance, 206

Tonus, 55, 120, 121

Toxemia theory of sleep, 178-181

Training, 91, 111-114

Treppe, 103

Trigeminal nerve, 73, 80

UTRICLE, 99

VACATION, 221

Vagus nerve, 73

Valve action of synapse, 29, 30

Vasoconstrictors, 119

Vasodilators, 121, 122

Vasomotor reactions, 55, 119-126, 215

Velocity of nerve-impulse, 39

Ventilation, 204, 205

Ventricles of brain, 64

Vestibular nerve, 81, 100

Vestibule, 99

Visceral muscle, 115
symbols in dreams, 192

Vision, 80

Visual areas, 141, 145

Vital resistance, 124

Voluntary action, 53, 58, 87

WAKING, 182
state of, 177

Walking, 53, 98, 220

War, results of, 233

Waste-products of nerve, 39.
See *Fatigue*.
Tashiro on, 39

Wells and Forbes on electric disturbances, 174

Wink, 50

Wishes, 171, 206

Women, dull lives of, 172

Writing, 150

COLLEGE TEXT-BOOKS

PUBLISHED BY

W. B. SAUNDERS COMPANY

West Washington Square

Philadelphia

London: 9, Henrietta Street, Covent Garden

Prentiss' Embryology

Laboratory Manual and Text-Book of Embryology. By CHARLES W. PRENTISS, A. M., Ph. D., formerly Professor of Microscopic Anatomy in the Northwestern University Medical School, Chicago. Large octavo of 400 pages, with 368 illustrations, many in colors. Cloth, \$3.75 net.

This new work on Embryology is both laboratory manual and descriptive text-book. It is the only recent single volume describing the chick and pig embryos usually studied in the laboratory, giving you as well a concise, systematic account of human embryology. The descriptions of the chick and pig embryos to be studied in the laboratory cover over 100 pages and are illustrated with 132 instructive illustrations, most of them original.

Dr. J. W. Papez, Atlanta Medical College: "It is the only book that has fulfilled my needs exactly. I am using the book this session and will continue to use it in the future."

Herrick's Neurology

Introduction to Neurology. By C. JUDSON HERRICK, Ph. D., Professor of Neurology in the University of Chicago. 12mo of 360 pages, with 137 illustrations. Cloth, \$1.75 net.

This work will help the student to organize his knowledge and to appreciate the significance of the nervous system as a working mechanism. It presents the actual inner workings of the nervous mechanisms in terms that he can understand at the very beginning of his course in psychology, general zoölogy, comparative anatomy, and general medicine.

McFarland's Biology

Biology: General and Medical. By JOSEPH MCFARLAND, M. D., Professor of Pathology and Bacteriology, University of Pennsylvania. 12mo of 457 pages, illustrated. Cloth, \$1.75 net.

Just Issued. New (3d) Edition.

This work is particularly adaptable to the requirements of scientific courses. There are chapters on the origin of life and its manifestations, the cell and cell division, reproduction, ontogenesis, conformity to type, divergence, structural and blood relationship, parasitism, mutilation and regeneration, grafting, senescence, etc.

Prof. W. R. McConnell, Pennsylvania State College: "It has some admirable features, the most valuable of which is the careful résumé of the subjects of heredity and evolution."

Drew's Invertebrate Zoölogy

Invertebrate Zoölogy. By GILMAN A. DREW, Ph. D., Assistant Director of the Marine Biological Laboratory, Woods Hole, Mass. 12mo of 213 pages. Cloth, \$1.25 net. *New (2d) Edition.*

Professor Drew's work gives the student a working knowledge of comparative anatomy and leads him to an appreciation of the adaptation of the animals to their environments. It is a practical work, expressing the practical knowledge gained through experience. The type method of study has been followed.

Prof. John M. Tyler, Amherst College: "It covers the ground well, is clear and very compact. The table of definitions is excellent."

Daugherty's Economic Zoölogy

Economic Zoölogy. By L. S. DAUGHERTY, M. S., Ph. D., Professor of Science, Missouri Wesleyan College; and M. C. DAUGHERTY. Part I—*Field and Laboratory Guide*: 12mo of 276 pages, interleaved. Cloth, \$1.25 net. Part II—*Principles*: 12mo of 406 pages, illustrated. Cloth, \$2.00 net.

Not only does this work give the salient facts of structural zoölogy and the development of the various branches, but also the natural history—the *life and habits*. It emphasizes the *economic* phase throughout.

Prof. V. E. Shelford, University of Chicago: "It has many merits and is the best book of the kind on the market."

Stiles' Nutritional Physiology

Nutritional Physiology. By PERCY G. STILES, Assistant Professor of Physiology at Harvard University. 12mo of 288 pages, illustrated. Cloth, \$1.25 net. *New (2d) Edition.*

Dr. Stiles' new work takes up each organ, each secretion concerned in the process of digestion, discussing the part each plays in the physiology of nutrition—in the transformation of energy. In fact, the keynote of the book throughout is "energy"—its source and its conservation. The illustrations and homely similes are noteworthy.

Prof. M. E. Jaffa, University of California: "The presentation of the matter is excellent and can be understood by all."

Stiles' Nervous System

The Nervous System and Its Conservation. By PERCY GOLDTHWAIT STILES, Assistant Professor of Physiology at Harvard University. 12mo of 230 pages, illustrated. Cloth, \$1.25 net.

Prof. Stiles' wonderful faculty of putting scientific things in language within the grasp of the non-medical reader is nowhere better illustrated than in this book. He has a way of conveying facts accurately with rifle-ball precision. This new book is really a physiology and anatomy of the nervous system, emphasizing the means of conserving nervous energy.

Stiles' Human Physiology

Human Physiology. By PERCY GOLDTHWAIT STILES, Assistant Professor of Physiology at Harvard University. 12mo of 400 pages, illustrated. Cloth, \$1.50 net.

This new physiology is particularly adapted for high and normal schools and general colleges. It presents the accepted facts concisely with only a limited description of the experiments by which these facts have been established. It is written by a teacher who has not lost the point of view of elementary students. Professor Stiles has a unique and forceful way of writing. He has the faculty of making clear, even to the unscientific reader, physiologic processes more or less difficult of comprehension. This he does by the use of happy teaching devices. The illustrations are as simple as the text.

Jordan's General Bacteriology

General Bacteriology. By EDWIN O. JORDAN, Ph. D., Professor of Bacteriology; University of Chicago. Octavo of 669 pages, illustrated. Cloth, \$3.25 net. *Just Out—New (5th) Edition.*

This work treats fully of the bacteriology of plants, milk and milk products, dairying, agriculture, water, food preservation; of leather tanning, vinegar making, tobacco curing; of household administration and sanitary engineering. A chapter of prime importance to all students of botany, horticulture, and agriculture is that on the bacterial diseases of plants.

Prof. T. J. Burrill, University of Illinois: "I am using Jordan's Bacteriology for class work and am convinced that it is the best text in existence."

Eyre's Bacteriologic Technic

Bacteriologic Technic. By J. W. H. EYRE, M. D., Bacteriologist to Guy's Hospital, London. Octavo of 525 pages, illustrated. Cloth, \$3.00 net. *Second Edition.*

Dr. Eyre gives clearly the technic for the bacteriologic examination of water, sewage, air, soil, milk and its products, meats, etc. It is a work of much value in the laboratory. The illustrations are practical and serve well to clarify the text. The book has been greatly enlarged.

The London Lancet: "It is a work for all technical students, whether of brewing, dairying, or agriculture."

Fred's Soil Bacteriology

Soil Bacteriology. By E. B. FRED, PH. G., Associate Professor of Agricultural Bacteriology, College of Agriculture, University of Wisconsin. 12mo of 170 pages, illustrated. Cloth, \$1.25 net.

Dr. Fred has very carefully prepared a laboratory manual arranged primarily for students of soil bacteriology, soil chemistry, physics, and plant pathology. It is the outgrowth of many years' experience. The instructions he gives are unusually clear and definite, being based on quantitative results. He sets down a series of *practical exercises* on soil micro-organisms, on the nitrogen, carbon, sulphur, iron cycles, etc.

Hill's Normal Histology

Normal Histology and Organography. By CHARLES HILL, M. D., 12mo of 483 pages, 337 illustrations. Flexible leather, \$2.25 net. *New (3d) Edition.*

Dr. Hill's work is characterized by a brevity of style, yet a completeness of discussion, rarely met in a book of this size. The entire field is covered, beginning with the preparation of material, the cell, the various tissues, on through the different organs and regions, and ending with fixing and staining solutions.

Dr. E. P. Porterfield, St. Louis University: "I am very much gratified to find so handy a work. It is so full and complete that it meets *all* requirements."

Böhm, Davidoff, Huber's Histology

Histology. By A. A. BÖHM, M. D., and M. VON DAVIDOFF, M. D., of Munich. Edited by G. CARL HUBER, M. D., Professor of Embryology at the Wistar Institute, University of Pennsylvania. Octavo of 528 pages, 377 illustrations. Flexible cloth, \$3.50 net. *Second Edition.*

This work is conceded to be the most complete text-book on human histology published. Particularly full on microscopic technic and staining, it is especially serviceable in the laboratory. Every step in technic is clearly and precisely detailed. It is a work you can depend upon always.

New York Medical Journal: "There can be nothing but praise for this model text-book and laboratory guide."

Keefer's Military Hygiene

Military Hygiene and Sanitation. By LIEUT.-COL. FRANK R. KEEFER, Professor of Military Hygiene, United States Military Academy, West Point. 12mo of 305 pages, illustrated. Cloth, \$1.50 net.

You get here chapters on the care of troops, recruits and recruiting, personal hygiene, physical training, preventable diseases, clothing, equipment, water-supply, foods and their preparation, hygiene and sanitation of posts, barracks, the troopship, marches, camps, and battlefields; disposal of wastes, tropic and arctic service, venereal diseases, alcohol, etc.

Owen's Treatment of Emergencies

The Treatment of Emergencies. By HUBLEY R. OWEN, M. D., Surgeon to the Philadelphia General Hospital. 12mo of 500 pages, with 249 illustrations.

Dr. Owen's book gives you not only the *actual technic* of the procedures, but also the reason *why* a particular method is advised. This makes for correctness. You get chapters on fractures of all kinds, on contusions and wounds, going fully into symptoms, treatments, and complications. Particularly strong is the chapter on *gunshot wounds*, which gives the new treatments that the great European War has developed. You get the principles of hemorrhage, together with its constitutional and local treatments. You get chapters on sprains, strains, dislocations, burns and scalds, etc. The book is *complete*; it is *thorough*; it is *practical*.

Brady's Personal Health

Personal Health. By WILLIAM BRADY, M. D., Elmira, New York. 12mo of 407 pages. Cloth, \$1.50 net. *Just Issued.*

Dr. Brady teaches you *how to take care of yourself*, how to forestall illness, how to apply sound, practical judgment to the routine of your daily life. He gives you a clear idea of the causes of ill-health of any kind. He prescribes simple treatments when these are sufficient. He carefully indicates the stage at which professional advice should be sought. He knows what *you* want, for fifteen years' experience has taught him.

Winslow's Prevention of Disease

The Prevention of Disease. By KINELM WINSLOW, M. D., formerly Assistant Professor of Comparative Therapeutics, Harvard University. 12mo of 348 pages, illustrated. Cloth, \$1.75 net.

This book is a practical guide for the layman, giving him briefly the means to avoid the various diseases described. The chapters on diet, exercise, tea, coffee, and alcohol are of special interest, as are those on the prevention of cancer, colds, constipation, obesity, nervous disorders, tuberculosis, *infantile paralysis*, sex hygiene, decayed teeth, colds, enlarged tonsils and adenoids, and the diseases of middle age. The work is a record of twenty-five years' active practice.

Buchanan & Murray's Bacteriology

Veterinary Bacteriology. By ROBERT E. BUCHANAN, PH. D., Professor of Bacteriology, and CHARLES MURRAY, B. Sc., D. V. M., Associate Professor of Veterinary Bacteriology, Iowa State College of Agriculture and Mechanic Arts. Octavo of 500 pages, illustrated. Cloth, \$3.50 net. *New (2d) Edition.*

Professor Buchanan's new work goes minutely into the consideration of immunity, opsonic index, reproduction, sterilization, antiseptics, biochemical tests, culture media, isolation of cultures, the manufacture of the various toxins, antitoxins, tuberculins, and vaccines.

B. F. Kaupp, D. V. S., State Agricultural College, Fort Collins: "It is the best in print on the subject. What pleases me most is that it contains all the late results of research."

Sisson's Anatomy of Domestic Animals

Anatomy of Domestic Animals. By SEPTIMUS SISSON, S. B., V. S., Professor of Comparative Anatomy, Ohio State University. Octavo of 930 pages, 725 illustrations. Cloth, \$7.50 net. *New (2d) Edition.*

Here is a work of the greatest usefulness in the study and pursuit of the veterinary sciences. This is a clear and concise statement of the structure of the principal domesticated animals—an exhaustive gross anatomy of the horse, ox, pig, and dog, including the splanchnology of the sheep, presented in a form never before approached for practical usefulness.

Prof. E. D. Harris, North Dakota Agricultural College: "It is the best of its kind in the English language. It is quite free from errors."

Sharp's Veterinary Ophthalmology

Ophthalmology for Veterinarians. By WALTER N. SHARP, M. D., Professor of Ophthalmology, Indiana Veterinary College. 12mo of 210 pages, illustrated. Cloth, \$2.00 net.

This new work covers a much neglected but important field of veterinary practice. Dr. Sharp has presented his subject in a concise, crisp way, so that you can pick up his book and get to "the point" quickly. He first gives you the anatomy of the eye, then examination, the various diseases, including injuries, parasites, errors of refraction.

Dr. George H. Glover, Agricultural Experiment Station, Fort Collins: "It is the best book on the subject on the market."

Hadley on the Horse

The Horse in Health and Disease. By FREDERICK B. HADLEY, D. V. M., Associate Professor of Veterinary Science, University of Wisconsin. 12mo of 260 pages, illustrated. Cloth, \$1.50 net.

This new work correlates the structure and function of each organ of the body, and shows how the hidden parts are related to the form, movements, and utility of the animal. Then, in another part, you get a concise discussion of the causes, methods of prevention, and effects of disease. The book is designed especially as an introductory text to the study of veterinary science in agricultural schools and colleges.

Kaupp's Poultry Culture

Poultry Culture, Sanitation, and Hygiene. By B. F. KAUPP, M. S., D. V. M., Poultry Investigator and Pathologist, North Carolina Experiment Station. 12mo of 417 pages, with 197 illustrations. Cloth, \$2.00 net.

This work gives you the breeds and varieties of poultry, hygiene and sanitation, ventilation, poultry-house construction, equipment, ridding stock of vermin, internal parasites, and other diseases. You get the gross anatomy and functions of the digestive organs, food-stuffs, compounding rations, fattening, dressing, packing, selling, care of eggs, handling feathers, value of droppings as fertilizer, caponizing, etc., etc.

Lynch's Diseases of Swine

Diseases of Swine. With Particular Reference to *Hog-Cholera*. By CHARLES F. LYNCH, M. D., D. V. S., Terre Haute Veterinary College. With a chapter on *Castration and Spaying*, by GEORGE R. WHITE, M. D., D. V. S., Tennessee. Octavo of 741 pages, illustrated. Cloth, \$5.00 net.

You get first some 80 pages on the various breeds of hogs, with *valuable points in judging swine*. Then comes an extremely important monograph of over 400 pages on *hog-cholera*, giving the history, causes, pathology, types, and treatment. Then, in addition, you get complete chapters on all other diseases of swine.

Lusk's Elements of Nutrition

Elements of Nutrition. By GRAHAM LUSK, Ph. D., Professor of Physiology, Cornell Medical School. Octavo of 402 pages, illustrated. Cloth, \$3.00 net. *Second Edition.*

The clear and practical presentation of starvation, regulation of temperature, the influence of protein food, the specific dynamic action of food-stuffs, the influence of fat and carbohydrate ingestion and of mechanical work render the work unusually valuable. It will prove extremely helpful to students of animal dietetics and of metabolism generally.

Dr. A. P. Brubaker, Jefferson Medical College: "It is undoubtedly the best presentation of the subject in English. The work is indispensable."

Howell's Physiology

Physiology. By WILLIAM H. HOWELL, M. D., Ph. D., Professor of Physiology, Johns Hopkins University. Octavo of 1020 pages, illustrated. Cloth, \$4.00 net. *New (6th) Edition.*

Dr. Howell's work on human physiology has been aptly termed a "storehouse of physiologic fact and scientific theory." You will at once be impressed with the fact that you are in touch with an experienced teacher and investigator.

Prof. G. H. Caldwell, University of North Dakota: "Of all the textbooks on physiology which I have examined, Howell's is the best."

Bergey's Hygiene

Hygiene. By D. H. BERGEY, M. D., Assistant Professor of Bacteriology, University of Pennsylvania. Octavo of 529 pages, illustrated. Cloth, \$3.00 net. *New (5th) Edition.*

Dr. Bergey gives first place to ventilation, water-supply, sewage, industrial and school hygiene, etc. His long experience in teaching this subject has made him familiar with teaching needs.

J. N. Hurty, M. D., Indiana University: "It is one of the best books with which I am acquainted."

Pyle's Personal Hygiene

Personal Hygiene. Edited by WALTER L. PYLE, M. D., Fellow of the American Academy of Medicine. 12mo of 543 pages, illustrated. Cloth, \$1.50 net. *New (6th) Edition.*

Dr. Pyle's work sets forth the best means of preventing disease—the best means to perfect health. It tells you how to care for the teeth, skin, complexion, and hair. It takes up mouth breathing, catching cold, care of the vocal cords, care of the eyes, school hygiene, body posture, ventilation, house-cleaning, etc. There are chapters on food adulteration (by Dr. Harvey W. Wiley), domestic hygiene, and home gymnastics.

Canadian Teacher: "Such a complete and authoritative treatise should be in the hands of every teacher."

Galbraith's Exercise for Women

Personal Hygiene and Physical Training for Women By ANNA M. GALBRAITH, M. D. 12mo of 393 pages, illustrated. Cloth, \$2.25 net. *New (2d) Edition.*

Dr. Galbraith's book meets a need long existing—a need for a simple manual of personal hygiene and physical training for women along scientific lines. There are chapters on hair, hands and feet, dress, development of the form, and the attainment of good carriage by dancing, walking, running, swimming, rowing, etc.

Dr. Harry B. Boice, Trenton State Normal School: "It is intensely interesting and is the finest work of the kind of which I know."

McKenzie on Exercise

Exercise in Education and Medicine. By R. TAIT MCKENZIE, M. D., Professor of Physical Education, University of Pennsylvania. Octavo of 585 pages, with 478 illustrations. Cloth, \$4.00 net. *New (2d) Edition.*

Chapters of special value in college work are those on exercise by the different systems: play-grounds, physical education in school, college, and university.

D. A. Sargent, M. D., Hemenway Gymnasium: "It should be in the hands of every physical educator."

Morrow's Care of Injured

Immediate Care of the Injured. By ALBERT S. MORROW, M. D., Adjunct Professor of Surgery, New York Polyclinic. Octavo of 360 pages, 242 illustrations. Cloth, \$2.50 net. Second Edition.

Dr. Morrow's book tells you *just what to do* in any emergency, and it is illustrated in such a practical way that the idea is caught at once. There is no book better adapted to first-aid class work.

Health: "Here is a book that should find a place in every workshop and factory and should be made a text-book in our schools."

American Illustrated Dictionary

American Illustrated Medical Dictionary. By W. A. NEWMAN DORLAND, M. D., Member of Committee on Nomenclature and Classification of Diseases, American Medical Association. Octavo of 1137 pages, with 323 illustrations, 119 in colors. Flexible leather, \$4.50 net; thumb indexed, \$5.00 net. New (8th) Edition.

If you want an unabridged medical dictionary, this is the one you want. It is down to the minute; its definitions are concise, yet accurate and clear; it is extremely easy to consult; it defines all the newest terms in medicine and the allied subjects; it is profusely illustrated.

John B. Murphy, M. D., Northwestern University: "It is unquestionably the best lexicon on medical topics in the English language, and with all that, it is so compact for ready reference."

American Pocket Dictionary

American Pocket Medical Dictionary. Edited by W. A. NEWMAN DORLAND, M. D. 693 pages. Flexible leather, \$1.25 net; thumb index, \$1.50 net. New (9th) Edition.

A dictionary must be full enough to give the student the information he seeks, clearly and simply, yet it must not confuse him with detail. The editor has kept this in mind in compiling this Pocket Dictionary.

I. V. S. Stanislaus, M. D., Medico-Chirurgical College: "We have been strongly recommending this little book as being the very best."

DESCRIPTIVE CIRCULARS OF ALL BOOKS SENT FREE



